

# **TUMOR CELL MEDIATED MODULATION OF NK RECEPTORS AND THEIR ROLE IN CANCER**

**THESIS**

**Submitted to the Delhi Technological University  
for the award of the degree of**

**DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

**in**

**BIOTECHNOLOGY**

**By**

**RICHA SHARMA**



**DEPARTMENT OF BIOTECHNOLOGY  
DELHI TECHNOLOGICAL UNIVERSITY  
DELHI-110042 (INDIA)**

**2018**

**Copyright ©Delhi Technological University-2018**  
**All rights reserved**

*Dedicated to My Parents*

## **DECLARATION**

I, Richa Sharma, certify that the work embodied in this Ph.D. thesis is my own bonafide work carried out under the supervision of Dr. Asmita Das (Assistant Professor, Department of Biotechnology, Delhi Technological University) for a period of November, 2011 to April, 2018. The matter embodied in this Ph.D thesis has not been submitted for the award of any other degree/diploma.

I declare that I have devotedly acknowledged, given credit and refereed to the research workers wherever their works have been cited in the text and the body of thesis. I further certify that I have not willfully lifted up some other's work, para, text, data, results etc. reported in the journal, books, reports, dissertations, thesis etc. or available at websites and included them in Ph,D thesis and cited as my work.

Date:

Place:

**Richa Sharma**  
(Reg. No: 2K11/PhD/BT/01)





# DELHI TECHNOLOGICAL UNIVERSITY

## CERTIFICATE

This is to certify that the Ph.D. thesis entitled “**Tumor Cell Mediated Modulation of NK Receptors and their Role in Cancer**” submitted by **Richa Sharma** (Reg. No: 2K11/PhD/BT/01) to the Delhi Technological University, Delhi for the award of the degree of **Doctor of Philosophy** is based on the original work carried out under our supervision. It is further certified that the work embodied in this thesis has neither partially nor fully submitted to any other University or Institution for the award of any degree or diploma.

**Dr. Asmita Das**  
Asst. Professor  
Department of Biotechnology  
Delhi Technological University  
Shahbad Daulatpur  
Bawana, Delhi-110042

**Prof. Jai Gopal Sharma**  
Head of Department  
Department of Biotechnology  
Delhi Technological University  
Shahbad Daulatpur  
Bawana, Delhi-110042

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

*Nothing worthwhile comes in life without a struggle. It would not have been possible to write this doctoral thesis without the help and support of the kind people around me who, in their own ways, have helped me overcome difficult situations.*

*The mediocre teacher tells. The good teacher explains. The superior teacher demonstrates. “The great teacher inspires.” So is my Supervisor **Dr. Asmita Das**, who inspired and sensitized me. I believe that every piece of knowledge that I have gained, every achievement that I have managed to attain and every little thing that I know of this discipline wouldn't have been possible without her steady and strong support and mentoring. She inculcated the scientific aptitude in me to perform experiments and analyze them in a rational manner. I greatly appreciate all her contributions of time, ideas, advices and constructive criticism to make my PhD experience productive and stimulating. It would have been impossible to complete the thesis without her diligence, ideas and guidance. I have learnt a lot from you Ma'am.*

*“Nothing is possible without a platform”. I would like to express my gratitude to **Prof. Yogesh Singh, Vice Chancellor, Delhi Technological University** providing me with state-of-the art facility and infrastructure in order to pursue my research without any hindrances whatsoever.*

*I take this opportunity to thankfully acknowledge **Prof. Jai Gopal Sharma, Head, Department of Biotechnology** and **Prof. D. Kumar, Former Head, Department of Biotechnology** for their kind support and providing necessary facilities to undertake this study.*

*My sincere thanks to **Dr. A.N Bhatt**, (Sci-E) and **Dr. Ravi Soni** (Sci-D), Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Allied Sciences, DRDO, Delhi, for allowing me to work in their laboratories, providing the mice models, instrument facility and for helping me in their maximum potential at various stages during the course of this work. I am also thankful to **Mrs. Namita Kalra** for providing excellent technical support.*

*I extend my sincere thanks to **Dr. Niti Puri** and **Dr. Tulika Prasad** (Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi) for their continuous contribution in carrying out my experimental work.*

*I gratefully acknowledge Prof. B.D Malhotra, Dr. Navneeta Bharadvaja, Dr. Yasha Hasija, Prof. Pravir Kumar, Dr. Saurabh Saxena and all faculty members for their guidance and useful support during my study period.*

*“Kind words can be short and easy to speak, but their echoes are endless.” I thank Dr. Lata Nain, IARI, New Delhi whose adeptness, creative thoughts, perspicuous mind, affectionate encouragement and untiring efforts have developed an independent thinker in me. I feel highly indebted for her affection and blessings. I also wish to express my sincerest gratitude to Dr. Surender Singh, IARI, New Delhi for his constant encouragement and support in various ways.*

*“A candle loses nothing by lighting another candle”. It is my privilege to thank my seniors and friends Mr. Arvind Kanva, Dr. Anuj Rana, Dr. Priyanka Choudhary, Dr. Shikha Verma, Himanshu and Ritu for their valuable suggestions and affectionate encouragement. My sincere thanks go to my dear colleagues and friends Aditya, Himani (Guru-behan), Nupur and Isha who offered me their time, help and support in need of assistance.*

*I will not be able to thank enough Divya and Saumya for their help and for creating a pleasant atmosphere in the lab. I can't remember a single instance when I was in need of support and I didn't have them around. I remember with gratitude the prompt and timely help rendered by Abhishek and Mr. Satish, I thank them for their supporting help.*

*I would like to thank Mr. C.B Singh, Mr. Jitendra, Mr. Sandeep, Mr. Rajesh and all the staff members of the department and University who helped directly or indirectly in achieving this goal.*

*Special word of thanks for my dear friends Aastha, Vikas, Madhuri, Simran, Ankit, Shashank, Neeraj who heard, understood and stood beside me at all times without being judgmental. I don't have words to thank my friends Mona, Vineet and Rohit for their wonderful support and belief. They have always asked me 'Aur kitana padhegi ? I am happy to inform them that it's done now. Thank you for sharing all the joys, sorrows, hopes, memories and above all, this bond that I cherish the most.*

*I express my immense pleasure in acknowledging the invaluable timely help, encouragement and moral support rendered by my close and deeply affectionate friends, **Dr. Km Pranaw** and **Dr. Poonam Malhotra** during the study period. You both have always motivated me to work harder and do my best. Thank you.*

*I would like to acknowledge **my laptop** for essential support in this long period and to write my ideas. I know you are just a piece of hardware to anybody else, but to me, you are an extension of my being and without you, it is hard to be me. Thank you.*

*Boundless gratitude goes towards my parents for their unconditional love, moral support; blessings and never-ending sacrifices that they have made to see me reach so far. I owe my every achievement to both of them. I want to thank my sisters **Payal, Ankita** for their special concern about my cell lines (tere cells kaise hain?) and my brothers **Achin** and **Vasu**, who always encouraged and supported me during the entire journey. I express my love and affection to my ever-loving son, **Advit**, who created a cheerful environment during my most valuable period of my journey. I am also grateful to my parent-in-laws for showering their blessings from heaven.*

*Now, I am pleased to acknowledge my husband **Dr. Bharat Joshi**, for his unconditional support, constant faith, motivation and great patience in all my good and bad times. I am immeasurably grateful to him for every little and big thing he did and continues to do for me. You portray the symptoms of my shortcomings, and the celebration of my virtues. I have become a better person because of the mirror you hold up for me. Thank you.*

*I am grateful to the **Delhi Technological University** for providing me financial support in the form of Junior Research Fellowship and Senior Research Fellowship. Acknowledgement is also due to Department of Biotechnology, Delhi Technological University, Delhi for providing necessary infrastructure and facilities.*

*Above all, I am indebted to Almighty God for being with me always and bestowing his blessings in multifarious ways.*

*(Richa Sharma)*

## **ABSTRACT**

Natural Killer (NK) cells are large granular lymphocytes of the innate immune system with the capacity to kill tumor and virus infected cells without prior sensitization. This is distinct from the mechanism acquired by T-cells to kill target cells, which involves recognition of tumor antigens in a major histocompatibility restricted manner. NK cytotoxicity is regulated by a fine balance between activation and inhibition signals by a multitude of receptors stochastically expressed on each NK cell. NK cells preferentially kill target cells that lack surface expression of major histocompatibility (MHC) class I molecules. Inhibitory NK receptors recognize MHC class I molecules to induce inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity.

IL-2 is the first cytokine to be tested and successfully used as therapeutic agent in cancer. IL-2 stimulation has been shown to cause an expansion of NK cells and T-cells. In the present study, we explored the effect of IL-2 stimulation on proliferation of NK cell population and modulation of NK cell activity. IL-2 stimulation of NK cells resulted in proliferation of NK1.1<sup>+</sup> NK population and increase in expression of Ly49A (non-cognate) inhibitory receptor. However neither there was any change in cognate inhibitory receptor, Ly49C nor activating receptor, Ly49D. Hence, IL-2 was found to cause potentiation of NK population but did not result in auto-immunity due to NK activation in absence of tumor.

Despite, potential role of immune system in controlling tumor progression, the tumor cells often evolve strategies to escape immunosurveillance. It has been established that tumor cell mediate modulation in the NK cell receptor profile results in effector function against target cells. In the present study, tumor derived factors from NK resistant tumor were tested for NK receptor expression. In this study we showed that membrane derived factors of P815 interfere with the NK cell function by actively modulating the surface expression of NK cell inhibitory receptors, Ly49A and Ly49C. The inhibitory receptor modulation may be responsible for hypoactivity of NK cells against P815 target tumor cells. Thus, identifying the factors responsible for modulation in NK cell receptor expression and frequency will help to optimize the potential of NK cells in current therapies in combinatorial therapies against tumors.

NK cells express a wide range of inhibitory receptors and it was observed that NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA interaction resulted in better inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity than with classical HLA molecules. In the present study, the basis for this difference in inhibition potential of NK inhibitory receptors was explored. Since each NK cell expresses a multitude of receptors on a single cell; it was difficult to study binding affinities and residues involved in receptor-ligand interaction through experimental studies. Hence, binding affinity of different inhibitory receptors with classical and non-classical HLA molecules was explored through computational approach. The present study conclusively showed that there was greater affinity of NKG2 receptors for their ligands, non-classical HLA molecules due to engagement of more residues at the receptor-ligand interface.

NK cells have been used as potential immunotherapeutic agents against tumors. Various NK based therapies such as adoptive cell transfer therapy, chimeric antigen receptors, and cytokines based therapies have shown promising results but did not result in complete regression of tumors in most cases. Our findings would help to design strategies to strengthen the potential of NK cells in current NK based regimens for cancer therapy.

# CONTENTS

	<i>Page No.</i>
List of Figures	i-ii
List of Tables	iii
List of Abbreviations	iv-v
List of Publications	vi
<b>CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1-6</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2: REVIEW OF LITERATURE</b>	<b>7-58</b>
2.1 History of NK cells	7
2.2 NK cells as a bridge between innate and adaptive immunity	8
2.3 NK cell receptors	10
2.3.1 NK cell receptors in mice	11
2.3.1.1 Ly49 receptors	11
2.3.1.2 NKR-P1 receptors	12
2.3.2 NK cell receptors in humans	13
2.3.2.1 CD16 receptor	13
2.3.2.2 CD2 receptor	13
2.3.2.3 CD94/NKG2 heterodimer receptor	13
2.3.2.4 NKG2D receptor	15
2.3.3 Natural Killer Cytotoxicity receptors	16
2.3.3.1 NKp46	16
2.3.3.2 NKp30	17
2.3.3.3 NKp44	17
2.3.4 DNAM-1 receptor	18
2.3.5 PIL receptor	18
2.3.6 2B4 receptor	19
2.3.7 KLRG1 receptor	19
2.3.8 KIR family receptors	19
2.4 NK cell signalling pathway	22
2.4.1 NK activation	22

2.4.2	NK inhibition	23
2.4.2.1	KIRs associated inhibition	23
2.4.2.2	NKG2A/CD94 associated inhibition	24
2.5	NK cell response	26
2.5.1	NK cell recognition	26
2.5.2	NK cell mediated cytotoxicity	28
2.5.2.1	Cell death by cytokine secretion	30
2.5.2.2	Antibody dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity	30
2.6	Tumor microenvironment	31
2.6.1	Tumor microenvironment in immune evasion	32
2.6.1.1	Cells in tumor microenvironment	33
2.6.1.1.1	T-lymphocytes	33
2.6.1.1.2	B-lymphocytes	34
2.6.1.1.3	NK cells	34
2.6.1.1.4	Natural Killer T-lymphocytes	35
2.6.1.1.5	Tumor associated macrophages (TAM)	36
2.6.1.1.6	Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs)	37
2.6.1.1.7	Regulatory T cells (Tregs)	37
2.6.1.1.8	Dendritic Cells (DC)	38
2.6.2	Inflammation as tumor inducer	40
2.6.3	Immunosuppressive cytokines	40
2.6.3.1	TNF- $\alpha$	41
2.6.3.2	IL-6	41
2.6.3.3	TGF- $\beta$	42
2.6.3.4	IL-10	43
2.6.4	Tumor-derived factors	44
2.6.5	Alteration in NK cell receptor profile	45
2.7	NK and virus infection	47
2.8	NK cell in fetal implantation	48
2.9	NK cell in autoimmunity	49
2.10	IL-2 responsiveness of NK cells	50
2.11	NK cell based Immunotherapies	52
2.11.1	Cytokines	52
2.11.2	Other factors	54
2.11.3	Adoptive cell transfer therapy	54



2.11.4	Genetically modified NK cells	55
2.11.5	Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs)	56
2.11.6	Bi-specific and tri-specific antibodies	57
2.11.7	Chimeric antigen receptors (CARs)	57
2.11.8	Immunomodulatory drugs (iMiDs)	58
2.11.9	Combination treatment	58

### **CHAPTER 3: MATERIALS AND METHODS** **59-70**

3.1	Materials	59
3.1.1	Chemicals and Reagents	59
3.1.2	Equipments and instruments	62
3.2	Methodology	62
3.2.1	Preparation of cells culture medium	62
3.2.2	Maintenance of cell culture	63
3.2.3	Experimental animal model	64
3.2.4	NK cell preparation	64
3.2.5	Evaluation of cell viability	65
3.2.6	Staining and flow cytometry	66
3.2.7	Isolation of Membrane fraction from cell lines	66
3.2.8	Estimation of IFN- $\gamma$ , and MIP-1 $\alpha$ cytokines secretion using ELISA	67
3.2.9	Prediction of 3D structures of NK receptors and ligands	68
3.2.10	Molecular docking of NK receptor –ligand complex	70
3.2.11	Receptor-Ligand interaction analysis	70
3.3	Statistical Analysis	70

### **CHAPTER 4: RESULTS** **71-104**

4.1	NK cell isolation	71
4.2	Expansion of NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation	72
4.3	Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell inhibitory receptor profile	73
4.4	Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell activating receptor profile	75
4.5	Effect of IL-2 on NK mediated cytokine secretion	77

## LIST OF FIGURES

<i>Figure No.</i>	<i>Titles</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>Figure 2.1:</b>	NK cell Signalling	25
<b>Figure 2.2:</b>	Structures of NKG2A/CD94 and KIR inhibitory receptors	26
<b>Figure 2.3:</b>	Natural Killer (NK) cells activating and inhibitory receptors	27
<b>Figure 2.4:</b>	‘Missing-self’ mechanism of NK cells	28
<b>Figure 2.5:</b>	Cells in tumor microenvironment	39
<b>Figure 2.6:</b>	Interaction between NK and stromal cells in tumor microenvironment	46
<b>Figure 2.7:</b>	Structure of IL-2 receptor	51
<b>Figure 4.1a:</b>	Purification of NK cells	72
<b>Figure 4.1b:</b>	Purification of NK cells	72
<b>Figure 4.2:</b>	Viable cell count upon IL-2 stimulation of NK cells	73
<b>Figure 4.3:</b>	Effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell inhibitory receptors	74
<b>Figure 4.4:</b>	Effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell activating receptors	76
<b>Figure 4.5:</b>	Kinetics and profile of MIP-1 $\alpha$ secretion on IL-2 stimulation	77
<b>Figure 4.6:</b>	Kinetics and profile of IFN- $\gamma$ secretion on IL-2 stimulation	78
<b>Figure 4.7:</b>	Viable cell count upon co-culture of NK cells with tumor cells	79
<b>Figure 4.8:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells (2:1) on inhibitory receptors	80
<b>Figure 4.9:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells (2:1) on activating receptors	81

<i>Figure No.</i>	<i>Titles</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>Figure 4.10:</b>	Viable cell count upon adaptation of P815 cells in serum-free medium	82
<b>Figure 4.11:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cell supernatant on inhibitory receptors	82
<b>Figure 4.12:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cell supernatant on activating receptors	83
<b>Figure 4.13:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells using transwell on NK cell inhibitory receptor	84
<b>Figure 4.14:</b>	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells using transwell on NK cell activating receptor	85
<b>Figure 4.15:</b>	Western blot of P815 cells membrane derived protein	86
<b>Figure 4.16:</b>	Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide on inhibitory receptors	87
<b>Figure 4.17:</b>	Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide on activating receptors	89
<b>Figure 4.18:</b>	Secretion profile of IFN- $\gamma$ and MIP-1 $\alpha$	89
<b>Figure 4.19a:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and classical HLA molecule (KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw2 and KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw5)	94
<b>Figure 4.19b:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and classical HLA molecule (KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw1 and KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw7)	95
<b>Figure 4.19c:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and classical HLA molecule (KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4)	96
<b>Figure 4.19d:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and classical HLA molecule (KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw3)	97
<b>Figure 4.20:</b>	Ramachandran plot of NK receptors interactions with classical HLA molecules	98
<b>Figure 4.21a:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and non-classical HLA molecule (NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E)	101
<b>Figure 4.21b:</b>	Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and non-classical HLA molecule (NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G)	102
<b>Figure 4.22:</b>	Ramachandran plot of NK receptors interactions with non-classical HLA molecules	102

## LIST OF TABLES

<i>Table No.</i>	<i>Titles</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>Table 2.1:</b>	NK cell receptors in human and mouse model	21
<b>Table 3.1:</b>	List of chemicals and reagents	59
<b>Table 3.2:</b>	List of buffers/solutions	61
<b>Table 3.3:</b>	Resolving gel composition	61
<b>Table 3.4:</b>	Stacking gel composition	62
<b>Table 3.5:</b>	List of equipments and instruments	62
<b>Table 3.6:</b>	List of NK receptors, ligand and complex structures available on PDB	69
<b>Table 4.1:</b>	Percentage of activating and inhibitory receptors expressing NK cells in absence (NK alone) and presence (NK+IL-2) of IL-2	75
<b>Table 4.2:</b>	Cognate ligands for different NK cell inhibitory receptors	90
<b>Table 4.3:</b>	Lowest scores of modelled 3D structures obtained from I-TASSER	91
<b>Table 4.4:</b>	RMSD scores (Å) after refinement of structures with different refinement server	91
<b>Table 4.5:</b>	Molecular interactions between NK inhibitory receptors with classical HLA molecules	92
<b>Table 4.6:</b>	Ramachandran plot scores of NK receptors interactions with classical HLA molecules	93
<b>Table 4.7:</b>	Molecular interactions between NK inhibitory receptors with non-classical HLA molecules	100
<b>Table 4.8:</b>	Ramachandran plot scores of NK receptors interactions with non-classical HLA molecules	101

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ACT	:	Adoptive cell transfer
APC	:	Allophycocyanin
BCA	:	Bicinchoninic acid
CD	:	Cluster of Differentiation
DMEM	:	Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium
DTT	:	Dithiothreitol
ECL	:	Electrochemiluminescence
EDTA	:	Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid
EGTA	:	Ethylene glycol-bis ( $\beta$ -aminoethyl ether)-N,N,N',N'-tetraacetic acid
ELISA	:	Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
FITC	:	Fluorescein isothiocyanate
H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub>	:	Hydrogen peroxide
H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	:	Sulphuric Acid
HLA	:	Human Leukocyte Antigen
HRP	:	Horseradish peroxidase
IFN	:	Interferon
IL	:	Interleukin
KIR	:	Killer Immunoglobulin Receptors
MHC	:	Major Histocompatibility Complex
MIP	:	Macrophage Inflammatory Proteins
NK	:	Natural Killer Cells
PBS	:	Phosphate buffered saline
PDB	:	Protein Database

PE	:	Phycoerythrin
PFA	:	Paraformaldehyde
PVDF	:	Polyvinylidene fluoride
RMSD	:	Root Mean Square Deviation
RT	:	Room Temperature
TEMED	:	Tetramethylethylenediamine
TMB	:	Tetramethylbenzidine

## LIST OF PUBLICATIONS

**Sharma R** and Das A (2018). “IL-2 mediates NK cell proliferation but not hyperactivity”. *Immunologic Research*. 66(1):151-157.

**Sharma R** and Das A (2014). “Organ specific phenotypic and functional features of NK cells in human”. *Immunologic Research*. 58(1):125-31.

Kaur H, **Sharma R** and Das A (2014). “Mir”acles in Neuro Molecular Medicine”. *International Journal of Advanced Biotechnology and Bioinformatics*. 2:19-26.

**Sharma R** and Das A (2018). “Tumor derived factors induced modulation in NK cell receptors for evading NK cytotoxicity” (Communicated).

**Sharma R** and Das A. (2018). “Comparative study of affinities of NK inhibitory receptors with classical vs non-classical MHC ligands” (Communicated).

### Poster Presentations

**Sharma R** and Das A (2018). “Effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell receptor profile and Function”. 17<sup>th</sup> Annual International Conference RGCON, Liver tumor: Primary & Secondary “Dilemmas to Decision”, 9 -11 February, 2018, Rajiv Gandhi Cancer Institute and Research Centre, Delhi, INDIA (Awarded Best E-poster).

**Sharma R** and Das A. “Effect of tumor derived factor on Natural Killer cells. National conference on Protein Structure and Dynamics in Health and Agriculture”, 3-4 November, 2017, Jamia Milia Islamia, Delhi, INDIA

**Sharma R** and Das A (2013). “*In-silico* approach to study affinities of different NK cell inhibitory receptor interaction with their cognate ligands”. India-Japan workshop on Bioelectronics and organic nanotechnology for environment preservation, 13-14 December, 2013, Delhi Technological University, Delhi, INDIA.

4.6	Effect of culturing NK cells with NK resistant cell line P815 on NK cell receptor profile	78
4.7	Effect of culture of NK cells with P815 supernatant on NK receptor profile	81
4.8	Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells using transwell assay on NK cells receptor profile	84
4.9	Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptides on NK cells receptor profile	86
4.10	Analysis of interaction of NK inhibitory receptors with classical MHC molecule	90
4.11	Analysis of interaction of NK inhibitory receptors with non-classical HLA molecule	99
4.12	Comparative analysis of KIRs with classical HLA and NKG2A/CD94 with non-classical HLA	100
<b>CHAPTER 5: DISCUSSION</b>		<b>105-110</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6: CONCLUSION</b>		<b>111-114</b>
<b>REFERENCES</b>		<b>115-150</b>
<b>PUBLICATIONS</b>		



*Chapter 1*  
*Introduction*

---

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION

---

Natural killer (NK) cells are crucial component of the innate immune system and have the ability to kill tumor and virus infected cells without prior sensitization to tumor antigens (Larsen et al., 2014). This is distinct from the mechanism employed by T-cells to kill target cells, which involves recognition of tumor antigens expressed in the context of major histocompatibility class I or II by a specific T-cell receptor (Marcus et al., 2014). NK cells act as a first line of defense against tumor targets and referred as 'Natural Killer cells'. NK cells produce cytokines through the interaction of a variety of cell surface receptors with their cognate ligands (Larsen et al., 2014). NK cells express multitude of activating and inhibitory receptors that transduce activating or inhibiting signals. Integration of these opposing signals determines the effector functions which involve cytotoxicity and cytokine production. Human NK cells express are characterized by surface marker CD56 and mouse NK cells by surface markers NK1.1 and DX5 (CD94b) (Mandal and Viswanathan, 2015).

Human NK cells can be categorized into two subsets on the basis of intensity of CD56 and CD16 surface expression. Systemic NK cells display two types of subsets,  $CD56^{dim}CD16^{+}$  and  $CD56^{bright}CD16^{-}$  (Amand et al., 2017). Approximately 90 % of peripheral blood NK cells (pNK) are  $CD56^{dim}CD16^{+}$ , which produced cytokines and lysed the target cells. By contrast,  $CD56^{bright}CD16^{-}$  NK cell subsets preferentially expressed in certain lymphoid organs were able to produce large amounts of cytokines, including interferon- $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), tumor necrosis factor (TNF), and granulocyte-macrophage

## *Introduction*

---

colony-stimulating factor, but cytotoxicity was attained only on their prolonged activation (Fauriat et al., 2010). Vossen and his group reported majority of circulating NK cell population, which were CD56<sup>dim</sup> and also CD27<sup>-</sup>, released high levels of perforin and granzyme B and had strong cytotoxic activity (Vossen et al., 2008). On the other hand, NK cells that were CD27<sup>+</sup> and CD56<sup>bright</sup> had markedly low levels of perforin and granzyme B and hence low cytotoxic potential. Also, recruitment of NK cells to different inflamed tissues is controlled via different chemokine receptors repertoire, and there exists a unique representation of NK cell subset in different tissues/organs (Shi et al., 2011). These phenotypically different NK cell subsets showing disparate functions might be activated during different stages of infection and other pathological conditions. Murine NK cells do not express functional homologue of human CD56. However, murine NK cells were categorized on the basis of CD11b ( $\alpha$ M integrin) and CD27 (TNFR) expression. CD11b<sup>hi</sup>CD27<sup>+</sup> and CD11b<sup>hi</sup>CD27<sup>-</sup> NK cell subsets in mice displayed distinct expression of activating and inhibitory receptors and cytokine production. CD11b<sup>hi</sup>CD27<sup>+</sup> NK cell subset showed enhanced cytotoxicity and the high levels of cytokine production. Conversely, CD11b<sup>hi</sup>CD27<sup>low</sup> showed low cytolytic potential against tumor targets (Shi et al., 2011).

Natural killer (NK) cells play a key role in innate host defense against tumors, virus as well as bacterial pathogens. Numerous studies in human and mice model had demonstrated the antiviral role of NK cells that included either direct killing of the infected target cell or production of cytokines that mediated effector response (Vidal et al., 2011, Jost and Altfeld, 2013). NK cells were found to mount an effective immune response against Human papilloma virus infection and HINI infection (Zhao et al., 2017, Fox et al., 2012). Tumor cells have a tendency to down-regulate MHC-I

molecules and this feature makes tumor cells susceptible to NK mediated lysis. On target cell interaction, they produce perforin, granzyme and cytokines and mediate anti-tumor immunity (Chester et al., 2015). NK cell frequency in tumors has found to be associated with clinical outcome of various cancers. The density of activated NK cells was correlated with tumor load in lung cancer and it was observed that more number of NK cells infiltrate the tumor site and are able to lyse the tumor cells (Larsen et al., 2014). NK cells also play important role against bacterial pathogens through pattern recognition receptors, by producing cytokines or by up-regulation of activating receptors. It was observed that stimulation of bacterial antigen and IL-22, resulted in activation of duodenal NK cells that showed enhanced IFN- $\gamma$  production by NK cells in response to *Helicobacter pylori* infection (Yun et al., 2005). It was reported that activated NK cells were involved in direct lysis of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infected monocytes by secreting IFN- $\gamma$ , perforin, granzyme B and granulysin and enhanced production of IL-1 $\beta$ , IL-18, CCL4/MIP-1 $\beta$  by monocytes in response to infection (Paidipally et al., 2018). Furthermore, it has been recently established that activated memory-like NK cells were associated with vaccine-induced protective immunity against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Venkatasubramanian et al., 2017).

NK cells exert strong cytotoxicity against tumor targets. However, the effector function of NK cells is compromised to a variable extent due to various mechanisms opted by tumor cells to evade immune response. These mechanisms may include interference with NK cell activation as well as modulation of NK cell function and frequency by tumor-derived factors (Vitale et al., 2014). Various strategies have been implemented to increase the NK cell number, viability and their cytotoxic function at the tumor microenvironment by the tumor cells. Different approaches include cytokine

## *Introduction*

---

based expansion and activation of NK cells, check point inhibitors targeting the NK cell receptors, development of specific antibodies crosslinking tumor specific antigens to CD16 on NK cells that resulted in NK cell activation (Wiernik et al., 2013). Immunotherapy using IL-2 had proved to be one of the main treatment modalities within cancer immunotherapy. IL-2 has been known to cause in NK and T-cells proliferation. Both NK and T-cells are responsive to IL-2 with different affinities, since, they express two different forms of IL-2 receptors (IL-2R), namely IL-2R $\alpha\beta\gamma$  (high affinity) in T-cells and IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  (intermediate affinity) in NK cells. Tumor microenvironment is characterized by the presence of different cell types (such as T-cells, NK cells, dendritic cells, myeloid cell) and high local levels of IL-2 secreted by infiltrating T-lymphocytes, the present study explored the role of IL-2 in modulation of NK activity in the presence or absence of tumor in the tumor microenvironment. Tumors also develop strategies for immune evasion and subversion of NK and T-cell activity. Hence we focused on the role of tumor derived factors on NK receptor modulation and NK activity. Further our study throws light on the relative potential for inhibition through distinct inhibitory receptors engaging classical and non-classical HLA molecules.

Our study therefore aimed to provide insights for developing better immunotherapies especially for tumors resistant to NK and IL-2 driven immunotherapies. Also, combinatorial therapy involving cytokines and multiple immune effector cells necessitates the study of tumor and cytokine mediated modulation of immune function and our study tried to address key issues in this immunomodulation therapy.

## **Objectives**

The present study was focused on the following objectives:

1. To study the response of cytokine mediated proliferation of NK cells.
2. To study the effect of tumor cells on NK activity in presence of IL-2 mediated NK stimulation in the tumor microenvironment.
3. Elucidation of the structural basis for the difference in affinities of different NK cell inhibitory receptor interaction with their cognate ligands.



*Chapter 2*  
*Review of Literature*

---



## CHAPTER 2

### REVIEW OF LITERATURE

---

#### 2.1 History of NK cells

In early 1970s, a study was intended to detect murine B cells (immunized) producing IgM against Sheep Red Blood Cells (SRBC) in Florida University, researchers observed deflated balloon appearance of the IgM-complement lysed SRBC by Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM). Formation of SRBC monolayer on the microscope slide surface depicted the immune cellular interactions. Interestingly, unusual plaques were observed that were being formed in these immunized mice in which lysed SRBC were absent. In fact, a central cell was seen in the 'clear' plaque that discharged some lytic agent that completely destroyed the surrounding SRBCs without prior immunisation. Regardless, of the presence of complement components, these central cells lysed SRBCs, creating clear plaques. These cells were called as complement independent plaque forming cells (CIPFC) and were also observed in spleens and lymph nodes of non-immunized mice (Thornthwaite et al., 1974a, Thornthwaite et al., 1974b). Later in 1975, Kiessling and co-workers observed a population of lymphocytes distinct from T-cells were able to kill leukaemia cells *in vitro* without previous sensitization. They designated these cells as 'Killer cells' that showed natural cytotoxicity against mouse Moloney leukemia cells (Kiessling et al, 1975). Further, many groups of researchers had shown their anti-tumor activity (Herberman et al., 1975a, Herberman et al., 1981, Robertson et al., 1990) and Kiessling and co-workers coined the term 'Natural Killer cells' in their publications (Kiessling et al., 1975b). Later, it was observed that anti-tumor activity of NK cells can be significantly augmented on stimulation with cytokines

like IL-2. This activated population was shown to have heightened cytotoxic potential as compared to unstimulated population. This separate active sub-population of NK cells was termed as 'Lymphokine activated Killer' (LAK) cells with ability to target wide spectrum of tumor. Adoptively transferred LAK has been shown to possess a potential anti-tumor efficacy against established metastasis (Davis et al., 2015).

## **2.2 NK cells as a bridge between innate and adaptive immunity**

Natural Killer (NK) cells represent 10–15% of circulating lymphocytes and functional ability to kill tumors and pathogen infected cells without prior sensitization. They are considered as effectors of innate immunity by virtue of their ability to secrete cytokines such as IFN- $\gamma$ , TNF- $\alpha$ , IL-10, IL-5, IL-13, growth factors such as GM-CSF (granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor), G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor), and many chemokines, including CCL2 (MCP-1), CCL3 (MIP1- $\alpha$ ), CCL4 (MIP1- $\beta$ ), CCL5 (RANTES), XCL1 (lymphotactin), and CXCL8 in response to physiological and pathological conditions (Fauriat et al., 2010, Vivier et al., 2011). NK cells have traditionally been known to be a part of the innate immune system. T-cells being key component of the adaptive response possess major characteristics of adaptive immunity; specificity and memory response (Mitrovic et al., 2012). However, in the recent years there has been growing evidence of memory response being exhibited by NK cells (Peng et al., 2013). In response to viral infections, NK cells secrete IFN- $\gamma$  that helps in immune recognition of virus infected cells and activate naive CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells into Th1-type helper effector cells leading to clearance of infected cells. MCMV infected mice had shown increased IFN- $\gamma$  levels and mediated protection by interfering with viral replication pathway (Mitrovic et al., 2012). Similarly, NK cells were reported to produce IFN- $\gamma$  without prior sensitization

and resulted in T-cell independent control of vaccinia virus in respiratory tract (Abboud et al., 2016). Moreover, NK cells stimulated with antibody coated target cell and IL-2/IL-12 had shown to produce a broad array of cytokines such as IFN- $\gamma$ , TNF- $\alpha$ , GM-CSF and chemokines including MIP-1 $\alpha$ , MCP-1, RANTES, IL-8, responsible for recruitment of T-cell at tumor site, therefore induced indirect adaptive response (Roda et al., 2006). Immunological memory and specificity has been considered as a hallmark of adaptive immunity. NK cells have shown the potential to persist for longer duration in the infected organ and have capacity to re-activate and undergo rapid expansion on subsequent exposure to pathogen or antigen. Therefore, NK cell has the ability to retain memory of previously exposed specific antigen, for example in RAG-deficient mice model, which lack T-cells and B-cells, NK cells alone were sufficient to generate contact hypersensitive response and hapten- induced memory (O'Leary et al., 2006). Moreover, it was evident that the NK cell mediated contact hypersensitive response was antigen-specific, because re-stimulation with different haptens did not result in memory-like response (Paust et al., 2010). Adoptive transfer of hepatic NK cells from donor but not splenic NK were capable of transferring memory to a naive recipient. These memory-like NK cells in liver expressed CXCR6, chemokine receptor, suggesting their role in liver homing and memory persistence but not antigen recognition (O'Leary et al., 2006, Paust et al., 2010). Peng et al. 2013 divided hepatic NK cells into two phenotypically distinct subsets, CD49a<sup>+</sup>DX5<sup>-</sup> and CD49a<sup>-</sup>DX5<sup>+</sup>. They reported that CD49a<sup>+</sup>DX5<sup>-</sup> NK cells possessed the potential to recall and upon hapten challenge, conferred hapten-specific contact hypersensitive responses (Peng et al., 2013). On the other hand, conventional NK CD49a<sup>-</sup>DX5<sup>+</sup> were involved in enhancing T-cell mediated anti-viral response against HBV infection via IFN- $\gamma$  secretion (Zheng et al., 2016). Interestingly, unlike conventional NK, NK

expressing CD49a<sup>+</sup>DX5<sup>-</sup> were known to originate from hepatic hematopoietic progenitor/stem cells (HPCs/HSCs) but not from the bone marrow (Peng et al., 2013). Furthermore, there are evidences of antigen-specific memory-like NK cell response in viral infections. In mice, interaction of Ly49H<sup>+</sup> NK cells with m157 glycoprotein, specifically expressed by MCMV-infected cells induced expansion, selective activation and production of inflammatory cytokines by the NK cells (Smith et al., 2002, Dokun et al., 2001). On subsequent exposure to MCMV, specific memory NK cells showed a more efficacious response than the naive NK cells (Sun et al., 2009). Similarly, in humans CD94/NKG2C<sup>+</sup> subset triggered adaptive response to control HCMV infection but cognate ligand for NK receptors is still unknown (Della-Chiesa et al., 2013). As expected from the memory cells, CD56<sup>dim</sup> CD16<sup>bright</sup> NKG2C<sup>+</sup> cell subset did not confer specific cytotoxicity against fibroblasts infected with HCMV. Nevertheless, cells displayed an increased ability to expand (Schlums et al., 2015) and produced cytokines like TNF- $\alpha$  upon stimulation by opsonized HCMV<sup>+</sup> target cells via CD16 receptor (Costa-Garcia et al., 2015, Muntasell et al., 2016). These studies have shown that NK cells can remember prior exposure to antigens resulting in NK cell memory generation. Therefore NK cells interplay between both innate and adaptive arms of immune system that control tumors and pathogenic infections. Further studies on their *in-vitro* expansion, maintenance of the memory NK cell pools and also the understanding of pathways involved in antigen recognition would open new horizons in the development of therapeutics for cancer.

### **2.3 NK cell receptors**

NK cells employ a distinct mechanism to distinguish and eliminate aberrant cells (Lanier, 2005). NK cells express a multitude of receptors that activate or inhibit effector

function. Activating receptors often bind to cognate ligands that are up-regulated on infected or tumor cells. Lack of surface MHC class I molecules and expression of appropriate ligands for NK cell receptor results in NK mediated cytolysis of the target cells. The NK cell receptors may belong to either of receptor superfamily, Ig-superfamily of type I membrane protein or C-type lectin family of type II membrane protein (Warren and Smyth, 1999).

### **2.3.1 NK cell receptors in mice**

#### **2.3.1.1 Ly49 receptors**

NK cell receptors that recognize MHC class I molecules are entirely different in mice. Ly49 receptors are type II C-type lectin-like membrane receptors coded by a family of highly polymorphic and polygenic genes and recognize H-2 class-I molecules on target cells. The Ly49 receptors present on the chromosome 6 in mice ‘NK gene complex’ which includes various related genes that encode both activating and inhibitory receptors, but majority of these receptors are involved in inhibition of NK cell function (Pegram et al., 2011). Ly49A is the prototypic member of klr gene family and contains immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs (ITIMs) in their cytoplasmic domains. Proteins encoded by different alleles of H-2 bind with different specificities and affinities to Ly49 receptor. NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A recognize H-2D<sup>d</sup>, D<sup>k</sup> and D<sup>p</sup> on the potential target cells. Ly49A receptor from C57BL/6 strain has the highest affinity for H-2<sup>d</sup> with a K<sub>D</sub> ~10 mM (Jonsson et al., 2010). Ly49C binds H-2K<sup>b</sup> and H2D<sup>b</sup> (Dam et al., 2003). Ly49I is also known to inhibit NK cell cytotoxicity and binds with H-2K<sup>b</sup>, D<sup>d</sup>, K<sup>d</sup>, and K<sup>k</sup>. While inhibitory receptor Ly49G2 binds H-2D<sup>d</sup>. Ly49D is NK cell activating receptor that stimulates cytotoxicity of murine NK cell (Goerge et al., 1999). Ly49D recognizes H-2D<sup>d</sup> antigen. Ly49D is known to be associated with

DAP-12 that contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif and mediates activation of NK cells (Smith et al., 1998). Polygenic and polymorphic nature of Ly49 receptors results in heterogeneity in both the type and level of Ly49 molecules expressed in different mouse strains. Ly49 members are best characterized in C57BL/6 strains. It was reported that NK cells from C57BL/6 expressed activating receptor Ly49H and efficiently recognized m157 viral protein on the surface of MCMV-infected cells, thereby, confer cytotoxicity against MCMV infection. In contrast 129 or BALB/c mouse strains did not express NK cell activating receptor Ly49H and were susceptible to MCMV infection (Lee et al., 2001, Daniels et al., 2001). Other Ly49 activating receptors Ly49P and Ly49W had been reported to interact with H-2D<sup>d</sup> (Silver et al., 2001, Silver et al., 2000).

#### **2.3.1.2 NKR-P1 receptors**

The NK cell receptor protein 1 (NKR-P1) (CD161) molecules belongs to family of type II transmembrane C-type lectin-like receptors. In C57BL/6 mice, NKR-P1 comprises four genes, NKR-P1A, NKR-P1C, NKR-P1D, and NKR-P1F. NK1.1 represent NKR-P1C gene and is the most specific serological marker on murine NK cells (Lanier, 2005). The PK136 mAb (anti-NK1.1) commonly used to detect NK cells reacts with the NKR-P1C gene product in C57BL/6 mice (Ljutic et al., 2005). NK1.1 functions as an activating receptor (Reichlin et al., 1998). NKR-P1D/B are known to have inhibitory function and both contain an ITIM in their cytoplasmic domain (Carlyle et al., 1999, Plougastel et al., 2001) while NKR-P1A receptor signalling has not been fully characterized. Thus, NKR-P1 family possess both activating and inhibitory receptors and recognizes target cell in MHC-independent manner.

### **2.3.2 NK cell receptors in humans**

#### **2.3.2.1 CD16**

CD16 is the low-affinity activating receptor that binds with Fc region of IgG (Fc $\gamma$ RIII) and mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). CD16 is 70kD glycoprotein belong to Ig superfamily and are expressed on the surface of NK cells, some DC, T lymphocytes, monocytes, and macrophages. Upon engagement of CD16, NK cells recognise specific antigen on the target cell and bind to tumor cell coated with antibodies that result in tumor cell death (Lanier, 2005).

#### **2.3.2.2 CD2**

CD2 is 50kD glycoprotein and is the member of Ig superfamily. CD2 express on the surface of NK cells and T-cells. CD2 is known to interact with different ligands like CD58, CD48, CD59 and CDL. Interaction between CD2 and CDL resulted in spontaneous cytotoxicity against prototypic cell line K562 (Warren et al., 1996). Moreover, transfection of NK resistant cell line P815 with CD2 ligand, CD58 rendered P815 cells susceptible to NK mediated lysis (Lanier, 1997). Recently, it was investigated that binding of CD2 with CD58 resulted in activation of NK cell and increased production of cytokines by NK cells and generated anti-viral response against CMV infection (Rolle et al, 2016). Further, co-stimulation of NK cells with CD2 showed enhanced antibody dependent response of NK cells in the absence against HCMV infection in NKG2C-deficient pateints (Liu et al., 2016).

#### **2.3.2.3 CD94/NKG2 heterodimer receptors**

Another C-type lectin family of receptors is the NKG2 family expressed as disulfide-bonded heterodimer form with CD94. The NKG2 family includes four genes, namely

NKG2A, NKG2C, NKG2E and NKG2D present on the chromosome 12 in human NK gene complex. CD94 lacks cytoplasmic domain and thus do not play role in transducing signal. There is evidence that NKG2 glycoproteins solely unable to express on the cell membrane and they require to bind CD94 glycoprotein. Thus, CD94 may help in transport of NKG2 receptors to the cell surface (Pegram, 2011). Like Ly49 receptors in mice, human NKG2/CD94 recognize MHC class-I molecules. NKG2A/CD94 designated as the first HLA class-I specific inhibitory receptor expressed by NK cells (Mingari et al., 1998). NKG2A/CD94 receptor complex binds to the non- classical MHC molecule (HLA-G/ HLA-E) expressed on the surface of the target cell or healthy cell. Thus, play important role in prevention of inappropriate NK cell activation. It was seen that NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical MHC interaction resulted in better inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity than with classical MHC molecule. It had been reported that extravillous trophoblasts (EVT) cells lack HLA-A/B expression and expressed an unusual combination of classical MHC class I molecule HLA-C and non-classical class I molecules HLA-E and HLA-G, which protected foetal tissues from maternal immune system (Gonen-Gross et al., 2010). Moreover, non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) tumor showed higher expression of non-classical HLA-E and HLA-G and interaction of NKG2A/CD94 inhibitory receptor with non-classical HLA protected tumors from NK cytotoxicity and resulted into tumor progression (Platanova et al 2011). In mice, NKG2A/CD94 receptor recognizes Qa1<sup>b</sup>.

NKG2C/CD94 and NKG2E/CD94 heterodimers have been shown to associate with DAP-12, an adaptor molecule that participates in activation of NK cell function. Thus, both NKG2C/CD94 and NKG2E/CD94 are considered as NK cell activating receptors.



#### **2.3.2.4 NKG2D receptor**

Natural Killer group 2D (NKG2D), C-type lectin surface activating receptor belongs to NKG2 family. Unlike other members of the family NKG2D does not couple with CD94 and expressed as homodimer. Activation of NK cell via NKG2D is distinct from other activating receptors as NKG2D requires association adaptor protein termed DAP-10. DAP-10 possess a negatively charged residue in the transmembrane portion and a tyrosine (YINM) motif, which is different from ITAM in the cytoplasmic tail, that, upon tyrosine phosphorylation, triggers activation of signalling pathway leads to granule polarization and degranulation (Moretta et al., 2001). It was reported that one NKG2D homodimer associated with four DAP-10 chains (Garrity et al., 2005) and there were two isoforms of the NKG2D molecule in mice strains. The longer isoform (NKG2D-L), which associated with DAP-10, stimulated a strong cytotoxic response and a shorter isoform (NKG2D-S), which recruited either DAP-10 or DAP-12 is results in both cytokine secretion and cytotoxicity (Gilfillan et al., 2002, Lanier, 2008). While Human NK cells only expressed the long isoform of NKG2D, which recruited DAP-10 and mediate both cytotoxic and cytokine-mediated response (Figure 2.3) (Billadeau et al., 2003). NKG2D recognize retinoic acid early transcript-1 (Rae-1) molecules, also murine ULBP-like transcript-1, (MULTI-1) and histocompatibility 60 (H60) molecules expressed by stressed or tumor transformed cells in mice (Cerwenka et al., 2000, Carayannopoulos et al., 2002, Mistry et al., 2007). In humans, ligands for NKG2D include the stress-inducible MHC class I chain-related gene (MIC), MIC-A and MIC-B, and UL-16 binding proteins (ULBP), ULBP1, ULBP2, ULBP3 and ULBP4. MICA and MICB are known to express by the tumors of epithelial tissues including breast, ovary, colon, kidney, and lung carcinomas and interaction between NKG2D and MICA/B leads to NK cell activation (Moretta et al., 2001).

### **2.3.3 Natural cytotoxicity receptors**

Natural cytotoxicity receptors (NCRs) are activating receptors and are the members of the Ig-superfamily in humans. Mainly, NCRs include NKp46, NKp44, NKp80 and NKp30 receptors expressed on the surface of NK cells and are strong mediators of NK cell cytotoxicity on interaction with their cognate ligands. NCRs are reported to bind broad range of ligands including viral hemagglutinin, bacteria, other parasite derived and even self-derived ligands but there is limited information about the cognate ligands for NCRs.

#### **2.3.3.1 NKp46**

NKp46 molecules are expressed on activated as well as resting NK cells (Moretta, 2001). The NKp46 gene is located on the human chromosome 19. NKp46 associates with CD3 $\zeta$  and the  $\gamma$ -chain of Fc $\epsilon$ RI that activate NK cells via their ITAM motif. NKp46 contains two extracellular domain, a transmembrane domain with positively charged arginine and short cytoplasmic tail. NKp46 are known to have potential role in lysis of tumors. It was observed that NKp46<sup>bright</sup> clones showed strong cytolytic activity against tumor targets (Sivori et al., 1999). Moreover, Knockout of NCR 1 gene, encoding NKp46 resulted in impairment of NK cell function and progression of lymphoma cells (Halfteck et al., 2009). The ligand identified so far for NKp46 is viral hemagglutinins (HA) (Arnon et al., 2004). It was reported that pancreatic  $\beta$  cells expressed unknown ligand for NKp46 responsible for development of type I diabetes in both mice and humans (Gur et al., 2011). In addition, hepatic stellate cells shown to express unknown ligands for NKp46 and lead to activation of NK cells which resulted in inhibition of liver fibrosis (Gur et al., 2011).

### **2.3.3.2 NKp30**

NKp30 is 30 kDa protein encoded by NKp30 gene present on the class III region of the human MHC. NKp30 is expressed by all NK cells including immature NK cells derived in vitro from CD34<sup>+</sup> precursors. The NKp30 molecule is composed of one extracellular immunoglobulin domain with positively charged arginine residue in their transmembrane domain (Joyce et al., 2011). Reported cognate ligand for NKp30 is B7-H6 (Li et al., 2011). Although, NKp30 was reported to bind HLA-B-associated transcript 3 (BAT3) (Pogge von Strandmann et al., 2007) but the structural relevance of NKp30 interaction with BAT3 has remain elusive. Initially there were reports on binding of NKp30 with heparan sulphates (HS) but later studies demonstrated that HS were not ligands for NKp30 and there was no influence on the NK cell activation after complete removal of HS (Warren et al., 2005).

### **2.3.3.3 NKp44**

NKp44 is 44kDa glycoprotein and expressed only on activated NK cells. Thus represent as specific marker for activated NK cells. The NKp44 gene is encoded in the class III region of the MHC locus on chromosome 6 in humans. The protein of NKp44 is composed of a single transmembrane domain and a short cytoplasmic tail that contains a sequence (EILYHTVA), corresponds to an immuno-receptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM). The ITIM motif reported to be functional only upon interaction with certain ligand like proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA) on tumor cells and inhibited NK cell mediated lysis of tumors (Rosental et al., 2011). Unlike, NKp30 and NKp46, NKp44 contain amino acid lysine in their transmembrane domain which interacts with ITAM-containing adaptor molecules, DAP-12 and transduce activating signal (Kruse et al., 2014). Like NKp46, NKp44 has been reported to bind HA and

Hemagglutinin neuraminidases (HN) of different viruses (Mandelboim et al., 2001, Chisholm et al., 2006, Jarahian et al., 2009). In line with these studies, NKp44 also known to bind certain unknown bacterial derived ligands but their clinical relevance still need to be addressed (Esin et al., 2008, Esin et al., 2013).

#### **2.3.3.4 DNAM-1 receptor**

DNAX accessory molecule-1, DNAM-1 receptor (CD226) is transmembrane glycoprotein and is co-stimulatory activating receptor belong to Ig-superfamily. DNAM-1 binds to CD155, Polio virus receptor (PVR or Necl-5) and CD112 (Nectin-2). Upregulation of DNAM-1 ligand, CD155 induce increased susceptibility of tumor cells to NK cell attack in multiple myeloma (Soriani et al., 2009). It was seen that DNAM-1 was involved in cytolysis of tumors that lack ligand expression for NK activating receptor and therefore broadened the spectrum of tumors to be recognized by the NK cells (Gilfillan et al., 2008). Furthermore, DNAM-1 had found to be associated with an adhesion molecule, lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1) and had shown crucial role in interaction between target and NK cell; therefore played key role in tumor recognition (Barao et al., 2003). In addition, DNAM-1 had shown to be involved in T-cells proliferation and co-stimulation (Shibuya et al., 2003).

#### **2.3.3.5 PIL receptor**

The paired Ig-like 2 receptor (PIL $\beta$ ) is a type 1 glycoprotein molecule. These receptors are comes under category of activating receptors as they are known to be associated with DAP-12. Whereas PIL $\alpha$  subunit contains ITIM sequence in its cytoplasmic domain and involved in inhibition of NK cell function (Pegram et al., 2011). The ligand for these receptors is PILR-L (CD99). These receptors recognized carbohydrate chains as opposed to proteins on the surface of target cell (Wang et al., 2008).

#### **2.3.3.6 2B4 receptor**

The 2B4 receptor (CD244) is considered as multi-functional receptor binds CD48 molecules expressed on all hematopoietic cells. There are two isoforms of 2B4 receptors, one isoform signal for activation and other isoform for inhibition. In humans, only one isoform is expressed that is involved in activation of NK cell function. In mice strains, both the isoforms are expressed with different cytoplasmic domains that induce either activation or inhibition of NK cell function (Mathew et al., 2009, Vaidya et al., 2005).

#### **2.3.3.7 KLRG1 receptor**

Killer cell lectin-like receptor G1 (KLRG1) is an inhibitory receptor that is reported to bind with classical cadherins, (E-, N- and R-cadherins). These cadherin ligands are expressed in healthy, solid tissues and thus play role in protecting healthy tissues from NK mediated lysis. It was found that ligation of KLRG1 with E-cadherin expressing targets resulted in inhibition of NK mediated lysis of the target cell. Thus, spared the cadherins expressing healthy cells and therefore KLRG1 played role in the 'missing self'-mediated activation of NK cells (Ito et al., 2006).

#### **2.3.3.8 KIR family receptors**

Killer immunoglobulin receptors (KIR) belong to Ig superfamily and KIR genes encode glycoproteins located on the human chromosome 19. There are two sub-families of KIR based on the number of Ig-like domains in the extracellular regions. The KIR3D sub-family possess three Ig-like domains and KIR2D sub-family contain two Ig-like domains (Lanier, 1998). There exists heterogeneity in the length of the cytoplasmic domains. KIRs with long cytoplasmic domains designated as KIR2DL and KIR3DL,

comprises two ITIM sequences that participate in inhibitory function of these molecules. In contrast, KIRs containing short cytoplasmic domain identified as KIR2DS and KIR3DS molecules that lack ITIM and rather contain a charged amino acid in the transmembrane domain containing ITAM that are responsible for activation of NK cell function. KIRs exist in monomeric form and crystal structures of five members of KIR family are known, KIR2DL1, KIR2DL2, KIR2DL3, KIR2DS2 and KIR2DS4 (Joyce and Sun, 2011). KIRs specifically bind to classical MHC class-I molecules and their cognate ligands are shown in Table 2.1. Inhibitory KIRs are known to bind various HLA-A, HLA-B and HLA-C alleles (Rajagopalan and Long, 2012). However the ligands for most activating KIRs are not known. Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIR) regulate natural killer cell response against infection and malignancy. Individual differences in NK-cell interactions and respond to infections are dependent on the combinations of variable killer immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) and HLA class-I gene products. Interaction between KIR and HLA-B allele, HLA-B\*40 and HLA-B\*08 was associated with the risk of breast cancer (Augusto, 2016). Also, unusual receptor-ligand interactions resulted in altered NK-cell-mediated immunity. It was proposed that altered KIR-HLA-C interaction resulted in over-activation of activating genes that contributed to disorders such as recurrent miscarriage (Faridi and Aggarwal, 2010). Studies had been carried out to identify KIR genes distribution and their association with tuberculosis. It was also reported that inhibitory genes KIR3DL1, KIR2DL3 and activating genes KIR2DS1, KIR2DS5 involved in susceptibility towards *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* either individually or in haplotype combinations (Pydi et al 2013).

**Table 2.1: NK cell receptors in human and mice model**

<b>Receptor Family</b>	<b>Ligands</b>	<b>Species</b>
<b>Ly49 family</b>		
<b>Activating receptors</b>		
Ly49D	H-2Dd	Mice
Ly49H	m157	
<b>Inhibitory receptors</b>		
Ly49A	H-2D <sup>d,k,p</sup>	Mice
Ly49C	H-2D <sup>b,d,k</sup> H-2K <sup>b,d</sup>	
Ly49I	H-2K/D <sup>b,d,s,q,v</sup>	
<b>KIR family</b>		
<b>Activating receptors</b>		
KIR2DS1	HLA-C2	Human
KIR2DS2	HLA-C1	
KIR2DS3	unknown	
KIR2DS4	unknown	
KIR2DS5	unknown	
KIR3DS1	HLA-Bw4	
KIR2DL4	HLA-G	
<b>Inhibitory receptors</b>		
KIR2DL1	HLA-Cw2, HLA-Cw4, HLA-Cw5	Human
KIR2DL2	HLA-Cw1, HLA-Cw3, HLA-Cw7	
KIR3DL1	HLA-Bw4	
KIR3DL2	HLA-A3, -A11	
<b>NKG2/CD94 family</b>		
<b>Activating receptors</b>		
NKG2C/CD94	Human- HLA-E/G	Mice/ Human
NKG2E/CD94	Mice- Qa1b	
<b>Inhibitory receptor</b>		
NKG2A/CD94	Human: MIC-A/-B, ULBP1/2/3/4	
NKG2D	Mouse: RAE-1, H60, MULTI-1	
<b>NCR family</b>		
<b>Activating receptors</b>		
NKp30	BAT-3, B7-H6	Mice/ Human
NKp44	Viral HA	
NKp46	Viral HA, HSPG	
<b>Others</b>		
<b>Activating receptors</b>		
2B4	CD48	Human/Mice
NKR-P1		Mice
DNAM-1	PVR, CD122	Human/Mice
PILR	CD99	Mice
<b>Inhibitory receptors</b>		
KLRG1	Cadherins	Mice

## **2.4 NK cell signalling pathway**

NK cell inhibitory and activating receptors utilize opposing signalling motifs to stimulate or inhibit activation. NK cell activation involves the interaction of activating receptors with their ligands on the target cell surface, which initiates the intracellular signalling pathways. This results in polarization and release of cytotoxic granules towards the target.

### **2.4.1 NK activation**

NK cell activation is mediated by conserved sequences present in the cytoplasmic domain of NK receptors or their associated adaptor proteins. NK cells activating receptors are associated with adaptor proteins which express three immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) containing adaptor proteins FcεRIγ, CD3ζ and DAP12 also called KARAP. ITAM consists of prototype sequence, Asp/Glu-x-x-Tyr-x-x-Leu/Ile x<sub>6-8</sub> Tyr xx Leu/Ile, where x is any amino acid. On interaction of NK cell activating receptor with their ligand on target cell, tyrosine residue in ITAM sequence gets phosphorylated leading to recruitment of the Src homology 2 (SH2) domain containing kinases (Syk or ZAP70) and the transmembrane adaptor proteins LAT and LAT2 that in turn activate downstream effector molecules, including phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K), the phospholipases PLCγ1 and PLCγ2, the guanosine triphosphate-guanosine diphosphate exchange (Grb) factors Vav2 and Vav3 and the MAP kinase extracellular-regulated kinase (ERK). These events cause a Ca<sup>2+</sup> influx, degranulation, and transcription of cytokine and chemokine genes (Lanier, 2005, Long et al., 2013). Activating receptors CD16 (FcγRIII), is associated with the ITAM-containing FcεRI γ chain and T-cell receptor (TCR) ζ chain. NKp46 and NKp30 are associated with the



TCR  $\zeta$  chain and NKp44, KIR2DS, and CD94/NKG2C signal through ITAM-containing DAP-12 molecule (Bryceson et al., 2006). While NKG2D adopt an alternate signalling mechanism, NKG2D associates with DAP-12 and DAP-10 in mice whereas in human NKG2D signal via DAP-10 adapter protein, which is not associated with ITAM. DAP-10 possesses a cytoplasmic YINM motif and involves direct recruitment of PI3K and the Grb2-Vav1 complex (Figure 2.1) (Long et al., 2013). This DAP10-dependent pathway alone triggered NK cell activation and cytotoxicity against target cell but was incapable to stimulate cytokine production (Lanier, 2009).

Other receptors like 2B4 transduce signal through their own cytoplasmic tail that contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based switch motif, which recruited SH2 domain containing adapter proteins SAP, resulted in activation of NK cell (Bryceson et al., 2009).

## **2.4.2 NK inhibition**

Human NK cell inhibitory receptors mainly include KIRs with long cytoplasmic domains (KIR2DL1, KIR2DL2, KIR2DL3) and NKG2A/CD94 molecules which are specific for different HLA molecules (Beldi-Ferchiou and Caillot-Zucman, 2017).

### **2.4.2.1 KIRs associated NK inhibition**

KIRs bind specifically to classical MHC class molecules, HLA-C and HLA-B and possess two immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) in their cytoplasmic domains (Rajalingam, 2016). ITIM consists of consensus sequence Ile/Val/Leu/Ser-x-Tyr-x-x-Leu/Val, where x is any amino acid. After phosphorylation of tyrosine residue in ITIM sequence, Src homology 2 domain containing phosphatases (SHP-1 and SHP-2) are recruited via ITIM. SHP convert phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-

trisphosphate (PI-3,4,5-P3) to phosphatidylinositol-3, 4-bisphosphate (PI-3,4-P2) and dephosphorylate downstream effector molecules vav1 and vav 2 (Figure 2.1). These events inhibit activation of Rac-1 and result in phosphorylation of the adapter Crk by Abl, leading to disassembly of the Cbl–Crk–C3G complex. This process inhibits activation of events responsible for NK cell activation and cytotoxicity (Watzl and Long, 2010). It was observed that engagement of inhibitory KIRs with classical HLA resulted in unsuccessful phosphorylation of ZAP-70 and LAT adaptor protein, thereby blocking NK cell cytotoxicity (Held, 2013).

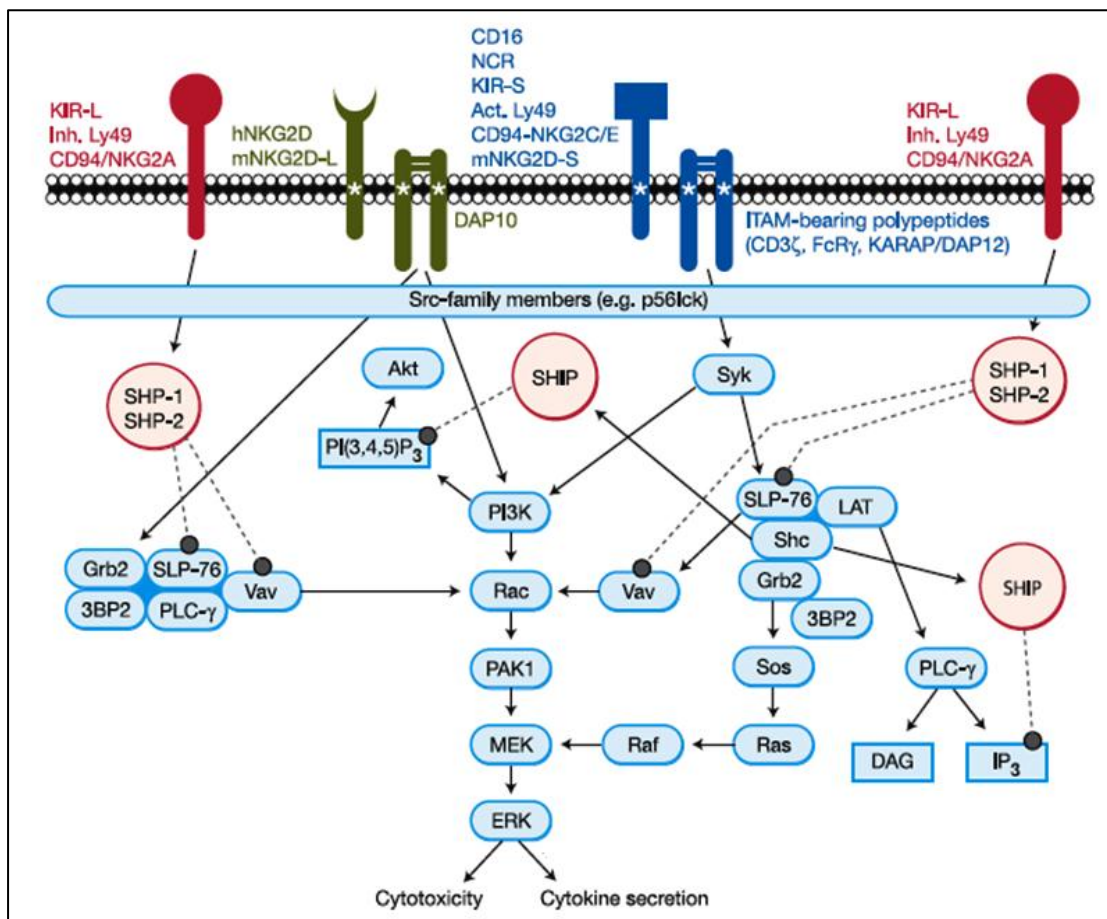
#### **2.4.2.2 NKG2A/CD94 associated NK inhibition**

NKG2A exist in heterodimeric form with CD94 and recognizes non-classical MHC class I molecules HLA-E and HLA-G (Gaynor and Colucci, 2017). Like KIRs, NKG2A contain two conserved ITIMs in their cytoplasmic domains, CD94 molecule does not contain cytoplasmic tail and thus lacks signal transduction capacity. Binding of HLA-E/G to NKG2A/CD94 complex results in activation of Src family kinases, leading to phosphorylation of tyrosine residues and enable recruitment of the tyrosine phosphatases SHP-1 and SHP-2 that causes de-phosphorylation of protein substrates of tyrosine kinase linked to activating NK cell receptors (Long et al., 2013).

It is believed that ITIM mediated signalling interfere with activation signal by de-phosphorylation. This de-phosphorylation turn NK cell “off” and block cascade initiated by activation receptor (Held, 2013). It was reported that  $\beta$ -arrestin 2 mediated recruitment of the tyrosine phosphatases SHP-1 and SHP-2 to inhibitory receptor and facilitated inhibitory signalling events (Watzl and Long, 2010). Further, was found that

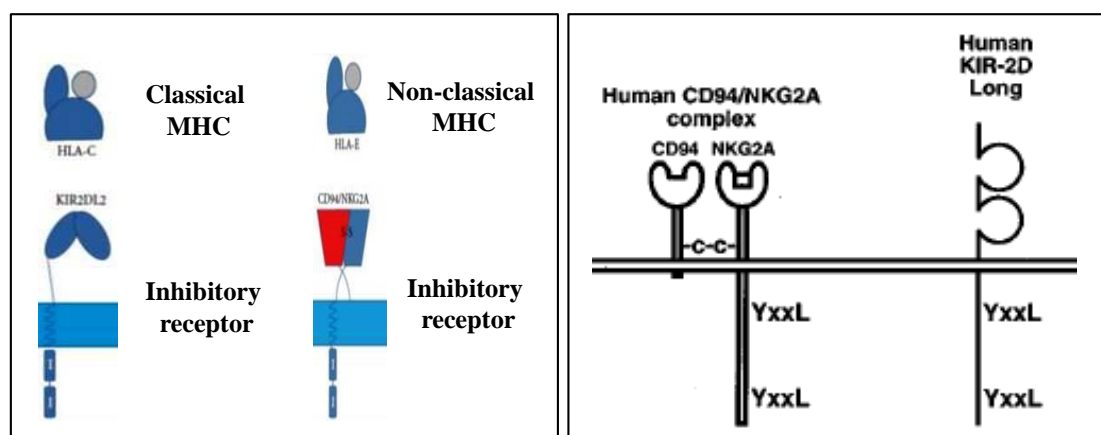
interaction of inhibitory receptor with their ligand resulted in phosphorylation of tyrosine adaptor, crk accompanied by de-phosphorylation of vav-1 and prevented NK cytotoxicity (Liu et al., 2012).

Although both KIRs and NKG2A/CD94 belong to different families and have structural differences (Figure 2.2) but all of these inhibitory receptors utilize common strategy to inhibit NK cell activation (Long et al., 2013).



**Figure 2.1: NK cell Signalling** (Vivier et al., 2004)

Activating receptors, associated with ITAM-bearing molecules are represented in blue and with DAP10 in green, inhibitory MHC class I-specific receptors are shown in red. 'h' stands for human while 'm' represent mice. \* indicate the presence of a transmembrane charged amino acid. KIR-S are activating killer cell Ig-like receptors with a short intracytoplasmic domain and no intrinsic signalling properties, whereas KIR-L are inhibitory receptors with an intracytoplasmic ITIM.



**Figure 2.2: Structures of NKG2A/CD94 and KIR inhibitory receptors.** KIRs bind to classical MHC (HLA-C) and NKG2A/CD94 bind to non-classical MHC (HLA-E) NKG2A receptors expressed as disulphide-bonded heterodimer form with CD94, and inhibitory KIR containing long cytoplasmic tail. Both receptors contain two ITIM sequences in their cytoplasmic domain while CD94 lack cytoplasmic tail (Adapted from Joyce and Sun, 2011, Lanier, 1998)

## 2.5 NK cell response

### 2.5.1 NK cell recognition

NK cell response is regulated by the balance between the expression of activating and inhibitory receptors. The outcome of immune response is determined by the extent of strength of activating/inhibitory signals. Different NK cell inhibitory and activating receptors are shown in Figure 2.3. The NK cells preferentially kill target cells that lack surface expression of MHC class I molecules and upon engagement of ligand for activating receptor by the infected or tumor transformed cell. For example, expression of MHC class I chain-related gene MICA/MICB, ligand for activation receptor NKG2D by the virus infected cell lead to activation of NK cell function (Ghadially et al., 2017). On the other hand, inhibitory NK receptors recognize major histocompatibility (MHC) class I molecules to modulate the immune response by inhibiting the NK cell cytotoxicity and spare the healthy cell. Thus, presence of MHC class-I molecule on the

cell prevents NK cell activation and provide the basis of “missing-self” whereas cell transformation lead to down-modulation of MHC-I molecules resulting in NK cell recognition and tumor cell lysis (Figure 2.4) (Langers et al., 2012). Normal self-cells usually expressed MHC-I molecules and were protected from NK cell mediated cytotoxicity. For example, although decidual NK cells (dNK) cells were in close contact with fetal-derived trophoblasts at the fetal-maternal interface yet they were not cytotoxic against them (Wallace et al., 2013). It was observed that activated peripheral blood (pNK) cells lysed trophoblast cell lines JAR and JEG3 but decidual NK (dNK cells) did not show cytotoxicity against trophoblast cells (Vacca et al., 2008).

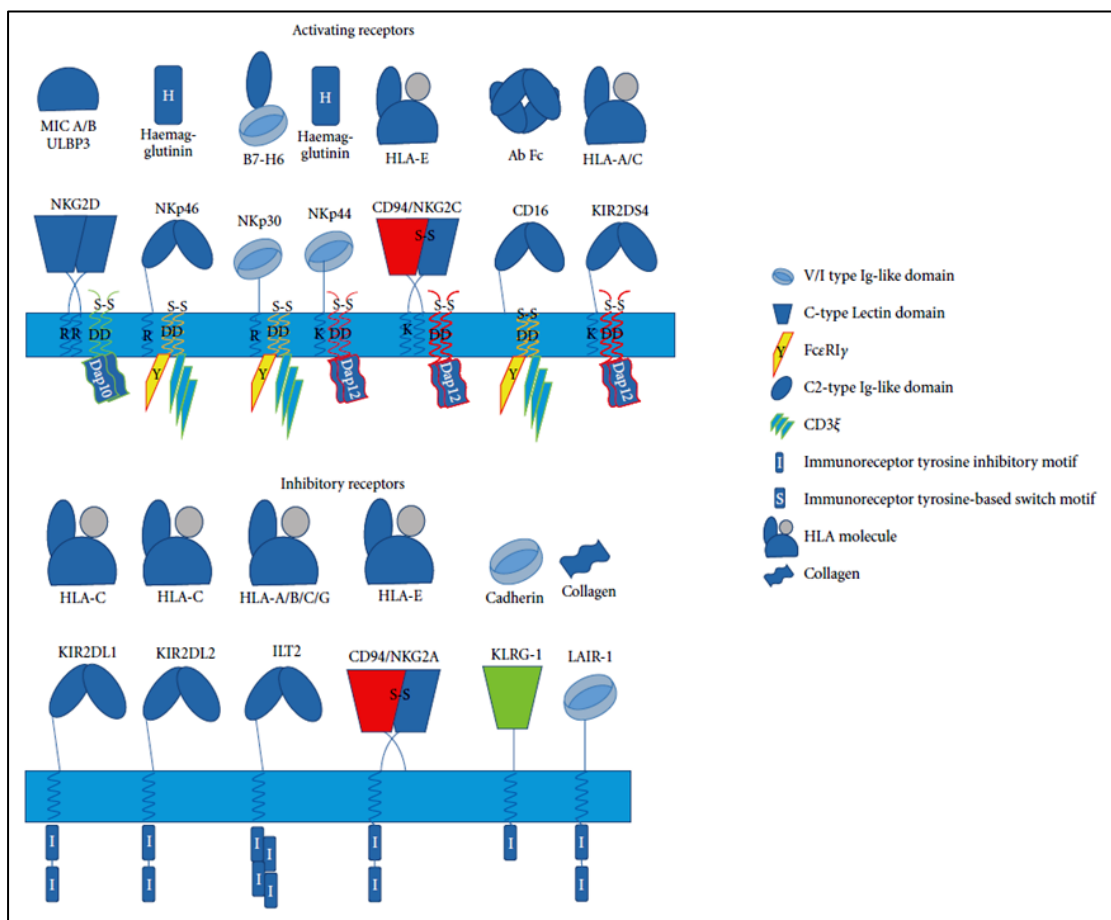
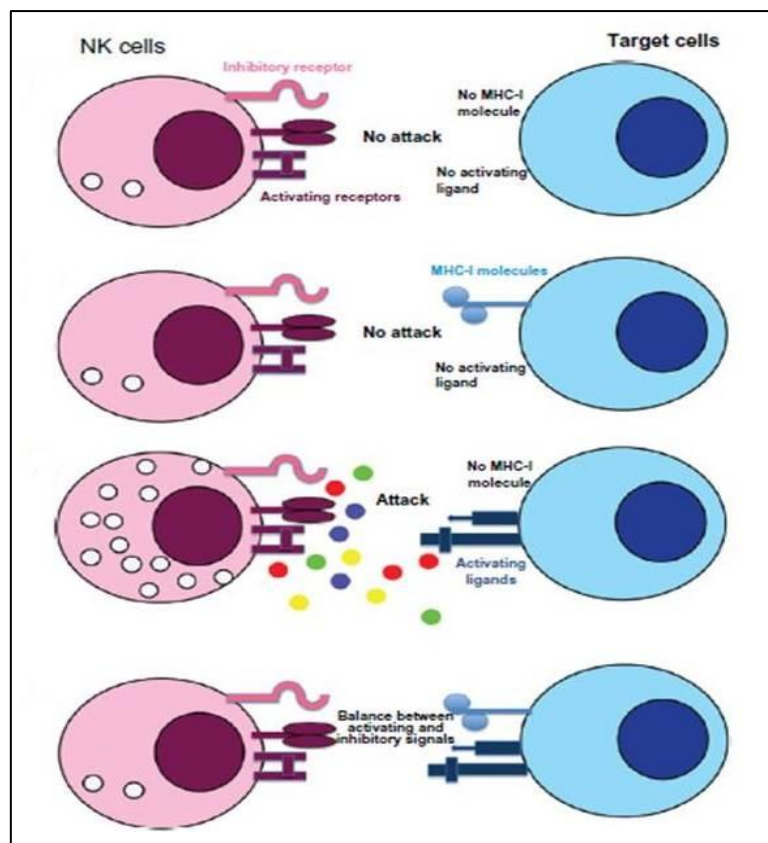


Figure 2.3: NK cell activating and inhibitory receptors (Sun and Joyce, 2011)



**Figure 2.4:** 'Missing-self' mechanism of NK cells (Langers et al., 2012)

### 2.5.2 NK cell mediated cytotoxicity

NK cells may utilize two basic mechanisms for target cell lysis:

1. Secretory pathway or Cytolytic granule-mediated cytotoxicity- Upon target cell interaction NK cells release pore forming protein, perforin and granzymes (including granzyme B, GrB), a family of serine proteinases, into the extracellular space causing the lysis of target cell. The process involves granule polarization and exocytosis of granules containing perforin and granzymes B. Exocytosis of granules causes homo-polymerisation of perforin in the target cell membrane in a calcium-dependent manner that facilitate the release of granzyme into the target cell cytosol, which in-turn triggers the

caspsases dependent cell death cascade. Eventually, causes proteolysis of key cytotoxic and nuclear substrates, thereby results in death of the target cell (Carotta, 2016).

2. Non-secretory pathway or TNF superfamily-mediated cell death- Studies on perforin and granzyme deficient animal models revealed that the existence of another  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  independent pathway to induce target cell death (Zamai et al., 1998). It involved the interaction of CD95L molecule (FasL/TNF) on effector cell with CD95, apoptosis-inducer (Fas/TNFR) expressed by the target cell. Fas belong to tumor necrosis factor (TNF) superfamily that incorporates a conserved intracytoplasmic 'death-domain' that participates in transducing apoptotic signal. Presently, five different death receptors are known, TNF receptor-1, CD95 (Fas/APO-1), TNF-receptor-related apoptosis-mediated protein (TRAMP) and TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) receptor-1 and -2. Crosslinking of receptor ligand complex results in the recruitment of an adaptor protein, Fas-associated death domain (FADD) to the death domain, which interact with FADD-like interleukin-1  $\beta$ -converting enzyme (FLICE). This interaction leads to the assembly of the receptor associated death-inducing signalling complex (DISC). The DISC-bound FLICE induces cytoplasmic and nuclear condensation and DNA fragmentation leading to apoptotic cell death (Chester et al., 2015, Zhu et al., 2016).

It was observed that unlike T cells, freshly isolated NK cells expressed FasL mRNA and exhibited cytotoxicity against transfectants expressing Fas antigens. It was also observed that NK cells failed to lyse the targets with mutant Fas antigens (Arase et

al., 1995). These findings suggested that FasL/ Fas interaction mediate NK cell cytotoxicity against their susceptible targets.

#### **2.5.2.1 Cell death by cytokine secretion**

NK cells has capability to mediate target cell death indirectly by secreting pro-inflammatory cytokines mainly type II interferon, IFN- $\gamma$  that play critical role to eliminate microbial infection and tumors (Green et al., 2017). In tumor microenvironment, IFN- $\gamma$  secreted by NK cells stimulated CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells to deviate toward Th1 subset and initiated the activation of macrophages and CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells that targeted tumor cells and induced tumor cytolysis (Melero et al., 2014). Other multifunctional cytokine is TNF- $\alpha$  that involve necrosis of target by B cell expansion and also differentiation of monocyte and macrophage (Balkwill, 2009, Arango-Duque and Descoteaus, 2014). Together, TNF- $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  triggers innate as well as adaptive immune response against the target (Wang et al., 2012).

#### **2.5.2.2 Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity**

Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) is the process of killing of an antibody-coated target cell by NK cell by the release of the cytotoxic granules. NK cells express Fc receptors on their surface, Fc $\gamma$ RIIIa and/or Fc $\gamma$ RIIc (CD16). Binding of Fc receptor to the Fc portion of antibodies transmitted the activating signals to the NK cells, leading to target lysis without priming and secreted cytokines such as IFN- $\gamma$ . IFN- $\gamma$  accelerated maturation of antigen presenting dendritic cells and other adaptive immune cells, thus resulted in producing memory response for the target cell (Wang et al., 2015). The efficiency of ADCC was thought to be dependent on the Fc $\gamma$ RIII polymorphism displayed by the NK cell and it was suggested that Fc $\gamma$ RIIIa binds with



high affinity to IgG1. Cetuximab treatment to patients with FcγRIIIa polymorphism had shown enhanced clinical benefits (Rodríguez et al., 2012). Similarly, FcγRIIIa polymorphism was shown to associated with increased clinical efficacy of Cetuximab drug in cancer patients (Sclafani et al., 2014).

## **2.6 Tumor microenvironment**

Malignant tumors are aberrantly proliferating cells due to mutation in genes associated with important biological pathways such as proliferation, apoptosis, and angiogenesis (Sever and Brugge, 2015). In comparison to healthy cells, tumor transformed cells over-expressed stress-induced molecules, tumor specific antigens or may downregulated expression of MHC-I molecules (Fang et al., 2017). Interaction between tumors and associated cellular and molecular components creates a tumor microenvironment. The tumor microenvironment consists of malignant cells, stromal tissues (cancer associated fibroblasts, blood), immune cells and myeloid population that include dendritic cells, macrophages and myeloid derived suppressor cells (Cui and Guo, 2016). Immune cells present in tumor microenvironment include both arms of immune system i.e adaptive and innate (Gajewski et al., 2014). As lymphocytes represent the substantial component of immune infiltrates, they are usually called as Tumor infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs). TILs mainly consist of T cells, B cells and NK cells (Whiteside, 2008). Presence of tumor infiltrating lymphocytes within tumor microenvironment has been considered as symbolic of ongoing immune response against developing tumors. Each cell in the tumor microenvironment has the ability to acclimatize in the hostile microenvironment and produce a number of immunomodulatory factors such as cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors (Bussard et al., 2016). Thus, successive changes occur on

interaction of immune cells with tumor cells at the tumor site that decides the fate of the developing tumor.

### **2.6.1 Tumor microenvironment in immune evasion**

Primarily, immune system has three major roles in prevention of tumor growth. First, elimination and suppression of virus induced tumors. Second, inhibit formation of inflammatory environment conducive to tumorigenesis by prompt elimination of pathogens. Third, identification and elimination of tumor specific antigens expressed by tumors and cellular stress induced molecules before the onset of their harmful effect, referred to as immunosurveillance. (Beatty and Gladney, 2015). Despite, potential role of immune system in controlling tumor progression, the tumor has evolved to escape immunosurveillance, thus, resulted in tumor escape from host immune system (Wang et al., 2015). Therefore, process of tumor progression includes immune-editing that divides into three phases, elimination, equilibrium and escape. Elimination involves the identification and elimination of tumor cells that has developed as a consequence of failed intrinsic tumor suppression mechanism. In case of partial elimination of tumor, a temporary state of equilibrium develops in which tumor cells either remain dormant or continue to evolve and induce modulation of tumor-specific or stress-induced antigens. In this phase tumor usually continue to remain in dormant state until microenvironment become favourable for its growth. These modulations create an environment where immune system fails to control tumor progression and results in selection of tumor cells that are able to resist or suppress the cytotoxicity of immune cells, leading to escape phase (Chew et al., 2012b).

### **2.6.1.1 Cells in tumor microenvironment**

Cellular components of immune system comprised of TILs and tumor associated myeloid populations of dendritic cells, macrophages and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC) (Figure 2.5) (Bussard et al., 2016). Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) were associated with the improved survival in different types of cancers, suggesting their role in anti-tumor immunity. Many studies had documented that immune system played a critical role in immunosurveillance and immunodeficient mice with defective T-lymphocytes, NK cells and impaired IFN- $\gamma$ , perforin activity develop tumor spontaneously (Smyth et al., 2000, Street et al., 2001, Van Den Broek et al., 1996). Traditionally, T-lymphocytes had been considered the major component of TILs (Hadrup et al., 2013).

#### **2.6.1.1.1 T-lymphocytes**

Cytotoxic T lymphocytes are the major effector cells that recognize tumor specific antigens associated with MHC-I molecules and produce perforin and cytokines that lead to killing of target tumor cells (Harimoto et al., 2013). Numerous studies had documented the role of infiltrating T-lymphocytes in good prognosis of several types of cancer (de Reuter et al., 2017, Hannani et al., 2012). High numbers of T cells infiltrated tumor microenvironment and CD8<sup>+</sup> memory T cells and CD4<sup>+</sup> helper T-cells (Th1) secreted IL-2 and IFN- $\gamma$  within tumor stroma, thus favoured tumor regression (Fridman et al., 2012). T-cell based immunotherapy had demonstrated most efficacious results in clinical trial (Wang et al., 2014). Although various T-cell based therapies utilizing genetically engineered T cells, and immune checkpoint inhibitor antibodies, adoptive cell transfer (ACT) of tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes are the promising approach for cancer treatment and have yielded clinical benefits but all the modalities are in their

infancy (Houot et al., 2015). These modalities require further optimization with respect to extent of possible antitumor effects and toxicities for better clinical outcomes (Wang et al., 2016).

#### **2.6.1.1.2 B-lymphocytes**

B cells, on antigen specific activation produce antibody producing plasma cells and mediate humoral anti-tumor activity. Nielsen et al., 2012 found that tumor-infiltrating CD20<sup>+</sup> B cells in conjunction with T cells were associated with better prognosis of ovarian cancer than T cells alone. Also, tumor infiltrating B cells played important role in control of tumor growth in Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients via activation of T cells that resulted in enhanced expression of IFN- $\gamma$  and granzyme B (Garnelo et al., 2017). Similar findings of other groups on cutaneous melanoma (Ladanyi et al., 2011), colorectal cancer (Maletzki et al., 2012), breast cancer (Yamaguchi et al., 2012) had shown the potential role of high density tumor infiltrating B cells in anti-tumor response. Thus, cancer therapy using TILs had provided consistently favourable results in anti-tumor response.

#### **2.6.1.1.3 NK cells**

NK cells are more valuable and more versatile alternative to T-cell mediated cytotoxicity against tumors. Unlike T cells, NK cells does not require prior sensitization and they have ability to kill target cell that lack MHC-I expression. Tumor cells have tendency to down-regulate MHC-I molecules and this feature makes tumor cells susceptible to NK mediated lysis. On target cell interaction, they produce perforin, granzyme and cytokines and mediate anti-tumor immunity (Chester et al., 2015). NK cell frequency in tumors has found to be associated with clinical outcome of various

cancers. The density of activated NK cells was correlated with tumor load in lung cancer and it was observed that more number of NK cells infiltrate the tumor site and able to lyse the tumor cells (Larsen et al., 2014). Increased population of NK cells had also been associated with better prognosis of leukaemia (Krzywinska et al., 2015). Moreover, it had been seen that chemokines expressed in tumor microenvironment induce NK cells infiltration and leading to enhanced tumor death in HCC (Chew et al., 2012a). It had been reported that less infiltration density of NK cells in tumor lesion provokes tumor escape from NK cytotoxicity in HCC (Sun et al., 2015a). There was an evidence for low expression of protein responsible for recruitment of NK cells in tumor tissue may subject to poor prognosis of HCC (Lin et al., 2011). Also, reduced NK population and lower expression of activating receptors promotes incidence of HCC and Non-small cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC) (Al Omer et al., 2011, Jiang et al., 2012, Sun et al., 2015b). Thus, the above findings suggested that the defects in NK cells function and population was associated with advanced cancer stage.

#### **2.6.1.1.4 Natural Killer T- lymphocytes**

Another lymphocyte subset distinct from NK cells with respect to their origin, phenotype, antigen recognition, and certain effector functions are NKT cells. NKT cells share characteristics with NK and T cells; they represent both NK (CD16, CD57, CD161 or NK1.1) and T cell (CD3) specific markers on their surface (Gapin, 2010). NKT recognize glycolipid antigens presented by CD1d, non-classical MHC class I-like molecule and secreted large quantities of cytokines and chemokines. NKT population is divided into two subsets, Type I NKT or invariant NKT (iNKT) and Type II NKT. Type I NKT express single invariant TCR $\alpha$  chain (V $\alpha$ 14-J $\alpha$ 18 in mice, V $\alpha$ 24-J $\alpha$ 18 in human) paired with certain TCR $\beta$  chains (using V $\beta$ 8.2, 7 or V $\beta$ 2 in mice, V $\beta$ 11 in

human) (Gapin, 2010). Both murine and human Type I NKT cells recognize the  $\alpha$ -galactosylceramide ( $\alpha$ -GalCer), Type I NKT cell ligand. Type II NKT are more diverse, similar to conventional T cells and bind to lipid antigens such as Sulfatides, lysosulfatide, lysophospholipids (Liao et al., 2013). Tumor infiltrated NKT cells had resulted in favourable outcome in neuroblastoma through activation of tumor associated macrophages (Metelitsa et al., 2009, Song et al., 2009). Moreover, NKT targeted immunotherapy had shown safe, feasible and better clinical outcome in NSCLC, head and neck tumors (Fujii et al., 2013). Although, NKT cells had shown important role in the immunosurveillance of different cancers but NKT cell defects both in frequency and function being observed in a variety of solid tumor and hematologic cancer (Nair et al., 2017). However, inconsistent characterization of NKT-cell subsets and heterogeneity of patient populations studied make a generalized conclusion of the NKT cell role in human cancer challenging (Favreau et al., 2016). A deeper understanding of the factors determining the induction of NKT-cell subsets during tumor development is an important goal of further investigation.

### **2.6.1.1.5 Tumor associated macrophages (TAM)**

TAM express CD206 marker on their surface and are present in abundant in tumor microenvironment. TAMs are known to originate from circulating monocyte and their recruitment to the tumor milieu is primarily mediated by tumor-derived chemotactic factor, CCL2. Initially, TAMs undergo polarization toward M1 response and induce anti-tumor response. However, as tumor progresses the interaction with tumor derived cytokines and skewed regulatory T cells, dendritic cells orient them to polarized type II/ M2 response. M2-polarized macrophages produce immunosuppressive factors such as IL-10 and TGF- $\beta$ , colony stimulating factors contributing towards tumor progression

(Quatromoni and Eruslanov, 2012, Owen and Mohamadzadeh, 2013). Role of TAM and other tumor-associated myeloid cells, including DCs, and MDSCs in immune evasion was further explained by the expression of Adenosine A2A receptors (A2ARs), which inhibited anti-tumor T-lymphocytes and NK activity. Myeloid-selective A2AR deletion resulted in significantly increased population and activation of M1 macrophages, T-lymphocytes and NK in Lung infiltrates (Cekic et al., 2014).

#### **2.6.1.1.6 Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs)**

MDSC (CD34<sup>+</sup>CD33<sup>+</sup>CD13<sup>+</sup>CD11b<sup>+</sup>CD15<sup>-</sup>) in the tumor microenvironment are known to involve in suppressing anti-tumor activity by down regulating the cytotoxic function of T lymphocytes and has been co-related with poor prognosis in cancer patients (Barnie et al., 2017, Chaudhary and Elkord, 2016). In tumor microenvironment, MDSC showed increased expression of iNOS and arginase which were responsible for enhanced production of RNS, ROS and depletion of extracellular L-Arg leading to suppressed T-cell function (Monu and Frey, 2012). In addition, MDSCs were involved in impairing NK cell cytotoxicity by down-regulating expression of activating receptor NKG2D and inhibition of perforin and STAT activation of NK cells (Hasmim et al., 2015, Shvedova et al., 2015).

#### **2.6.1.1.7 Regulatory T cells (Tregs)**

Tregs are the subsets of immunosuppressive cells that participate in maintaining homeostasis and self-tolerance. They display Forkhead Box P3 (FoxP3) transcription factor and the IL-2 receptor  $\alpha$  chain (CD25) (CD4<sup>+</sup>CD25<sup>bright</sup> Foxp3<sup>+</sup> T cells) on their surface (Chaudhary and Elkord, 2016). Chemokines such as CCL17/22-CCR4, CCL5-CCR5, CCL28-CCR10 and CXCL9/10/11-CXCR3 secreted by tumor cells and immune

cells facilitate their infiltration in tumor microenvironment (Chaudhary and Elkord, 2016). Tregs played a critical role in tumor progression and producing tumorigenic microenvironment. It was reported that Tregs isolated from tumors from colorectal cancer (CRC) patients inhibited the T- cell mediated toxicity by secreting TGF- $\beta$  and IL-10 and contributed to cancer progression (Scurr et al., 2014). In similar studies, in patients with HCC, pancreatic cancer and gastric cancer , Tregs were reported to limit T-cell anti-tumor effector function via secretion of TGF- $\beta$  and IL-10 and PGE2 (Amedei et al., 2013, Yi et al., 2013, Yuan et al., 2010). Also, Tregs were found to involve in strong inhibition of NK cell function mediated by TGF- $\beta$  in gastrointestinal tumor (Vitale et al., 2014). In an *In vitro* study, Tregs were involved in direct inhibition of NK cell Cytotoxicity and expression of the CD69 activation marker. Moreover, depletion of Tregs resulted in NK cell proliferation (Hasmim et al., 2015).

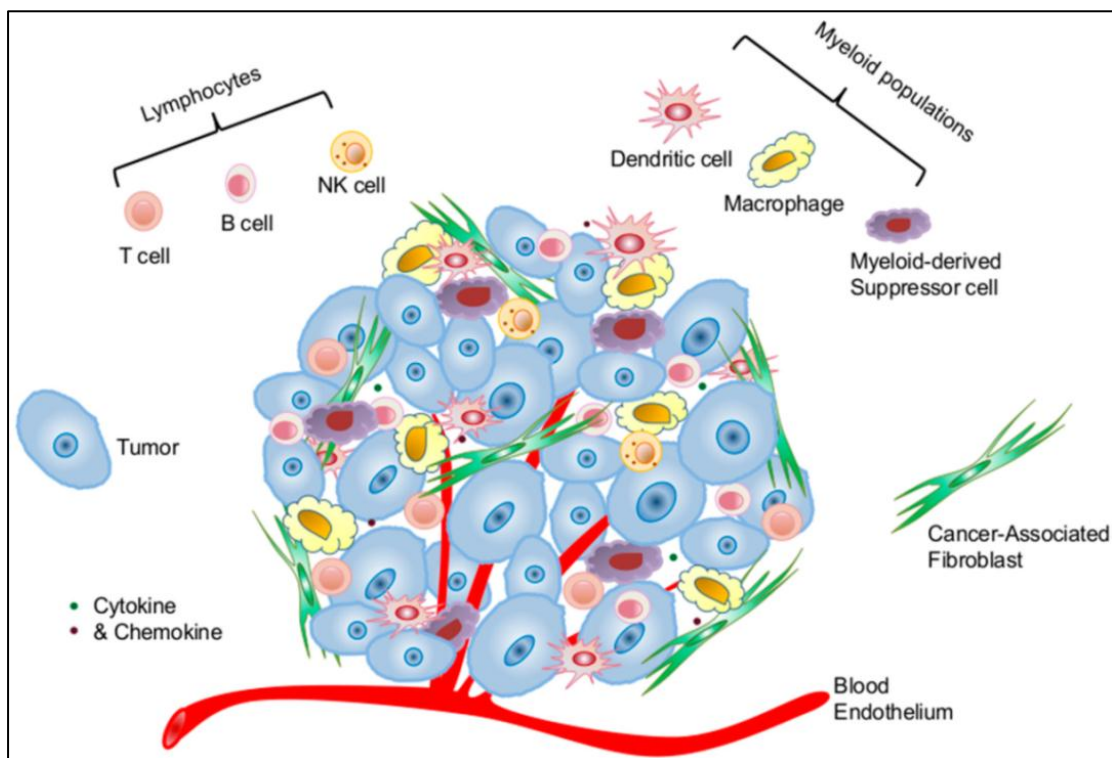
### **2.6.1.1.8 Dendritic cells (DC)**

Dendritic cells (DC) are major antigen presenting cells and have ability to acquire, process and present tumor antigens to T lymphocytes. DCs were involved differentiation of naïve T cells into activated tumor-specific lymphocytes (Hanke et al., 2013). They played a key role in mounting immune response by interacting with myeloid cells and other cells of the immune system (Yang et al., 2013). Infiltration of DC in tumor microenvironment had shown controlled tumor growth and overall survival of patients with lung carcinoma, gastric cancer, head and neck cancer, oral squamous cell carcinoma (Yang et al., 2013). However, several factors secreted by tumor associated fibroblast cells and TAM such as IL-10, IDO, TGF- $\beta$ , VEGF and chemokines resulted in skewed DC differentiation towards tolerogenic DC (Tran-Janco et al., 2015). These tolerogenic tumor infiltrating DC expressed high levels of



Programmed cell death receptor (PD-1) and T cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain 3 (TIM-3) which prevent antigen presentation to T-cells and inhibit tumor cytotoxicity (Karyampudi et al., 2014, Du et al., 2017). Furthermore, it had been investigated that sustained STAT3 phosphorylation in DCs is associated with enhanced TGF- $\beta$  secretion, which prevented NK cell activation, and blocking of TGF- $\beta$  restored NK cell functions (Sarhan et al., 2015). Also, IL-6 and IL-10 secretion by DC was resulted in inhibition of cytokine production and cytotoxicity of NK cells leading to poor survival and higher risk of leukaemia relapse (Perez-Martinez et al., 2011).

Therefore, cellular components of tumor microenvironment played an important role to calibrate the immune response to malignant cells and promoted events such as tumor invasion, angiogenesis, proliferation and metastasis (Hasmim et al., 2015).



**Figure 2.5: Cells in tumor microenvironment** (Cui and Guo, 2016)

### **2.6.2 Inflammation as tumor inducer**

Inflammation is the physiological response of immune cells that helps to heal and restore the injured or damaged tissue affected by pathogen, physical or chemical agents. However, if inflammation is unregulated, it results in onset of cellular events such as apoptosis, increased proliferation rate, and angiogenesis that promote malignant transformation of cells and carcinogenesis (Landskron et al., 2014). Many studies had investigated that inflammation is associated with increased risk of cancer (Long et al., 2017, He and Lin., 2017, Conway et al., 2016, Xiao et al., 2016). In early phase of tumor development, a state of hypoxic stress is established by activation of hypoxia responsive genes in tumor cells that favour migration of macrophages, granulocytes, and neutrophils (Semenza, 2016). Activation of these cells triggered abundance of Reactive Oxygen and Nitrogen species (ROS and RNS) production, leading to increased angiogenesis, cellular oxidative stress, damage of lipids, proteins, and DNA damage (Li et al., 2013). Further, recruitment of immune cells to the affected tissue resulting in secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF- $\alpha$  and sustained activation of signalling pathways such as NF- $\kappa$ B and STAT3 that favoured tumor progression (Laura D'Ignazio et al., 2017, Fan et al., 2013). Therefore, in a host reaction to the tumor, infiltrating immune cells together with tumor associated tissues contributed to establish an inflammatory milieu that nourished and promoted invasion and metastasis of cancer (He and Lin., 2017).

### **2.6.3 Immunosuppressive cytokines**

Cytokines secreted by the cells in the tumor microenvironment has potential to modulate anti-tumor response and induce cell transformation and malignancy.

### **2.6.3.1 TNF- $\alpha$**

TNF- $\alpha$  is the member of TNF superfamily and is recognized by their receptors: TNF- $\alpha$  receptor-1 (TNF- $\alpha$ R-1) and TNF- $\alpha$ R-2. TNF- $\alpha$  play important role in regulation of hematopoiesis, cell proliferation, angiogenesis, differentiation and immune cell activation. TNF- $\alpha$  is a prototypical proinflammatory cytokine and its role in cancer has been controversial (Landskron et al., 2014). TNF- $\alpha$  had found to play dual role either in tumor inhibition or in progression (Ham et al., 2016). In clinical trials, local administration of TNF- $\alpha$ -expressing adenovirus (TNFerade) gene therapy combined with chemotherapy found safe and effective in patients with advanced pancreatic and oesophageal cancer (Herman et al., 2013, Cheng et al., 2013). In contrast, it was analysed that treatment of tumor-bearing mice strain B16F10 with rhTNF- $\alpha$  resulted in a significant increase in tumor burden and metastatic foci. It was observed that rhTNF- $\alpha$  activated TNF- $\alpha$ R-2 on pulmonary Tregs, lead to expansion of immunosuppressive Tregs and enhanced lung metastasis (Chopra et al., 2013). Moreover, it was found that TNF- $\alpha$  signalling via TNF- $\alpha$ R-2 promotes accumulation of immunosuppressive MDSCs in tumor milieu helps tumor cells evade the immune system (Zhao et al., 2012). Suganuma and co-workers (2012) investigated that TNF- $\alpha$ -inducing protein secreted by *Helicobacter pylori* was responsible for increased TNF- $\alpha$  levels in preneoplastic lesions and associated with increased risk of gastric cancer (Suganuma et al., 2012).

### **2.6.3.2 IL-6**

Binding of IL-6 to IL-6 receptor, IL-6R $\alpha$  and co-receptor gp130 results in activation of the JAK/STAT signalling pathway that promote proliferation and reduced apoptosis of tumor cells. In a mouse model, IL-6 was shown to be secreted by stromal fibroblasts in microenvironment with gastric cancer (Kinoshita et al., 2013). IL-6 was known to

involve in tumor progression by promoting conversion of non-cancer cells into tumor stem cells. It was observed that non-cancer stem cells cultured in low-attachment plates secreted IL-6 that induced activation of IL-6R/JAK/STAT3 signalling pathway and upregulated tumor stem cell associated *OCT4* gene expression (Kim et al., 2013). Interleukin-6 (IL-6) was one of the major cytokines which was found at high concentrations in various cancers as compared to healthy controls. Elevated serum IL-6 levels in cancer patients were reported to be associated with tumor progression by regulation of all cancer hallmarks such as apoptosis, survival, proliferation, angiogenesis, invasiveness and metastasis (Landskron et al., 2014). Moreover, IL-6 promoted the tumor proliferation by protecting from oxidative stress, apoptosis and therapy-induced DNA damage by induction of countersignalling pathways involving antioxidant and anti-apoptotic/pro-survival (Kumari et al., 2016).

### **2.6.3.3 TGF- $\beta$**

TGF- is a pleiotropic cytokine, with immune-suppressing and anti-inflammatory properties and play important role in embryogenesis, cell proliferation, differentiation, apoptosis, adhesion and invasion. TGF- $\beta$  considered as most potent immunosuppressive cytokines which was directly involve in inhibition of clonal expansion of NK cells and CTLs and impairing cytotoxicity of NK cells, macrophages, and CTLs (Burkholder et al., 2014). It was observed that TGF- $\beta$  mediate upregulation of the transcription factor Forkhead box protein P1 (Foxp1) that induce suppression of anti-tumor T cells proliferation and activation (Stephen et al., 2014). Deletion of TGF $\beta$  receptor gene *Tgfb2* specifically in myeloid cells from advanced stage cancer patients significantly inhibited tumor metastasis, suggested that myeloid-specific TGF $\beta$  signalling was a vital component of the tumor metastasis (Pang et al., 2013). Additionally, TGF $\beta$  reported to

interfere with the activation of antigen-presenting dendritic cells and maturation of NK cells, thus inhibited effective anti-tumor response (Bellomo et al., 2016). In the tumor microenvironment, primary sources of TGF- $\beta$  were tumor and stromal cells, including fibroblasts and immune cells (Landskron et al., 2014). TGF- $\beta$  targeted anti-tumor therapies in advanced cancer patients had shown safe and promising results in preclinical and clinical studies (Connolly et al., 2012). In a clinical trial, T $\beta$ RI inhibitor, LY2157299 monohydrate was tested in patients with advanced cancer and glioma showed strong beneficial effects with no cardiotoxic side effects suggesting the promising anti-TGF $\beta$  therapy (Rodon et al., 2015).

#### **2.6.3.4 IL-10**

IL-10 is an anti-inflammatory cytokine released by various tumor cells and also produced by TILs, tumor-associated macrophages and almost all immune cells. It appeared to modulate the differentiation and antigen-presenting function of mature myeloid cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells. In tumor microenvironment, tumor-induced IL-10 was found to be specifically responsible for DC dysfunction and thus dampen antigen presentation capacity of DC allowing tumor to evade immune response (Hargadon, 2013). It was observed that DC secreted IL-10 was associated with suppressing NK cytotoxicity and inhibition of cytokine production by NK cells in hematopoietic stem cell transplantation patients (Perez-Martinez et al., 2011). In contrast to IL-6, which led to transient activation of STAT3, IL-10 induced a sustained STAT3 activation that resulted in enhanced metastatic potential of Lung cancer cells by promoting angiogenesis and resistance to apoptosis (Braun et al., 2013, Landskron et al., 2014). Similarly, elevated IL-10 were associated with poor prognosis of breast

cancer, Liver cancer, Oral squamous cell carcinoma (Esquivel-Velázquez et al., 2015, El-Emshaty et al., 2015, Aziz et al., 2015).

#### **2.6.4 Tumor-derived factors**

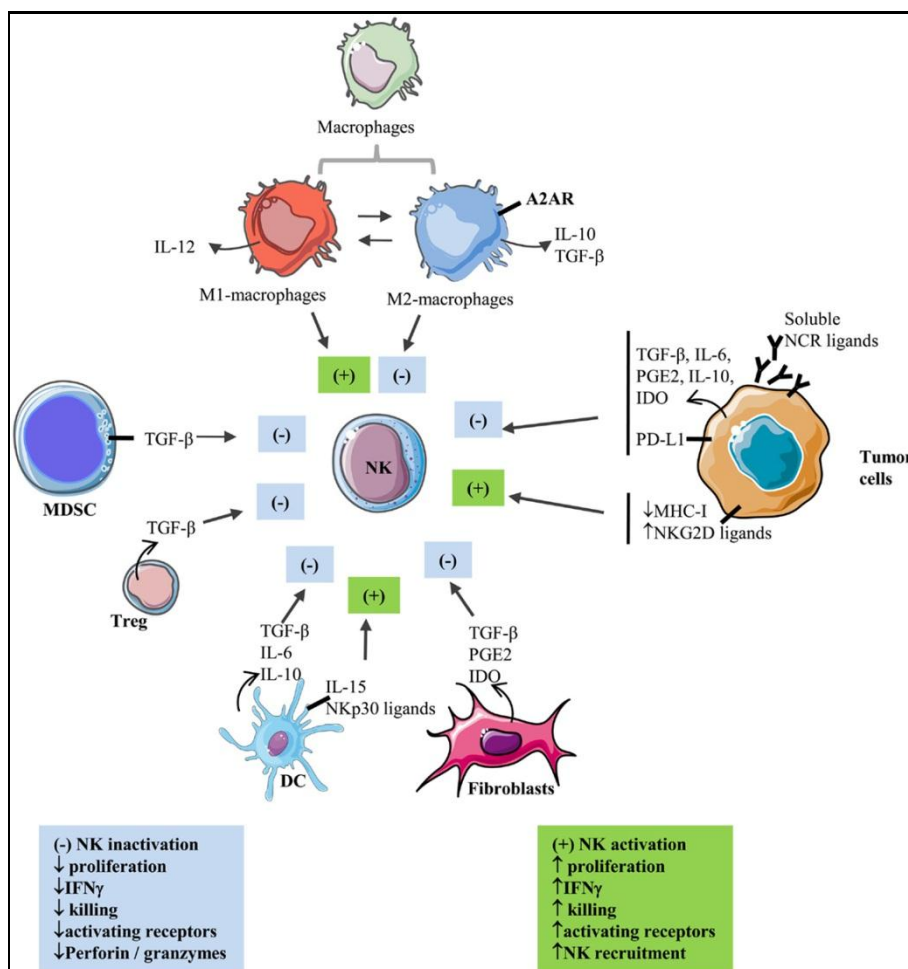
One of the most important mechanisms of immune evasion is the tumor cell derived growth factors which encourages tumor outgrowth. A variety of tumor derived soluble factors including vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), IL-10, TGF- $\beta$ , prostaglandins, soluble phosphatidylserine are known to contribute to immunosuppression (Wang et al., 2017). VEGF is 34-42 kD protein secreted by almost all tumor cells and was primarily known as a proangiogenic factor. VEGF induce dysfunction of antigen-presenting dendritic cells by increasing expression of immunosuppressive enzyme indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) and ineffective antigen presentation results in tumor evasion from immune system (Marti et al., 2013). Moreover, IDO shown to produce immunosuppressive tryptophan catabolites down regulated the expression of NK cell activating receptors and therefore inhibited NK function against tumors (Vitale et al., 2014). Recent studies had reported that like DCs, macrophages express VEGF receptor that caused infiltration of macrophages at the tumor site which promote neovascularization for continued tumor growth (Li et al., 2016). Soluble phosphatidylserine derived from cancer cells interacted with macrophages and released immunosuppressive factors such as IL-10, TGF and PGE2 contributed to anti-inflammatory response to macrophages, leading to anti-tumor response (Birge et al., 2016). Fibroblasts were associated with maintaining the structure and function of healthy tissues through remodeling and transient tissue repair during wound healing. However, fibroblasts were the major constituent of tumor stroma, especially in breast, prostate, and pancreatic cancers and involved in tumorigenesis (Ohlund et al., 2014). Tumor associated fibroblasts (TAFs) promoted tumor growth by

recruiting macrophages and secreting inflammatory cytokines and neoangiogenesis (Bussard et al., 2016). TAFs cells secreted certain immunosuppressive mediators such as IL-6, TGF- $\beta$ , VEGF, SDF-1, and CXCL1/2 at the tumor site that interfered with NK cell cytotoxicity (Hasmim et al., 2015). It was reported that CAFs derived factors like PGE<sub>2</sub>, matrix-metalloproteinases (MMP) is responsible for down-regulation of ligands for NK cell activating receptors and resulted in impaired activity of NK cells against melanoma targets (Vitale et al., 2014, Inoue et al., 2016, Ziani et al., 2017). Prostaglandins are the immunomodulators secreted mainly by antigen presenting macrophages and DC. Mainly prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> (PGE<sub>2</sub>) had been implicated in the tumor-associated alteration of immune function (Figure 2.6) (Wang and DuBois, 2016). Cyclooxygenases (COX) commonly overexpressed in various cancer tissues and responsible for biosynthesis of arachidonic acid to prostaglandins (PGs) and thromboxane. Interaction of PGE<sub>2</sub> to its receptor triggered activation signal that led to tumor cell proliferation, invasion, angiogenesis, and immunosuppression (Zelenay and Sousa, 2016).

### **2.6.5 Alteration in NK cell receptor profile**

In particular, NK cells are recognized as potent anti-tumor component of immune system. However, tumor microenvironment associated cell subsets, tumor derived factors, and metabolites with immunosuppressive roles mediate alteration in NK cells receptor expressions. This alteration of receptor expression led to impairment in cytotoxic activity and also cytokine production by NK cells (Baginska et al., 2013). The expression of activating receptors NKp30, NKp46 and NKG2D were found to be down-regulated in breast cancer patients (Nieto-Velázquez et al., 2016). It was observed that colorectal carcinoma derived fibroblasts released PGE<sub>2</sub> on co-culturing with NK cells and resulted in downregulating activating receptor expression level and NK activity

against tumor (Li et al., 2013). Moreover, Neuroblastoma-derived TGF- $\beta$  suppressed the NK cytotoxicity by decreasing the NKp30 expression level (Castriconi et al., 2013) and upregulating the surface expression of inhibitory receptor, NKG2A in lung cancer (Jin et al., 2014). Tumor cells had reported to escape NK mediated recognition by down-regulating the expression of ligands for activating receptors and over-expressing the ligands for inhibitory receptors, thus reduced NK cytotoxicity (Cremer et al., 2012, El-Gazzar et al., 2013, Mathew et al., 2016). Thus, tumor microenvironment play a pivotal role in constituting immunosuppressive networks that remain an important obstacle to cells involve in immune system and contribute to the tumor progression and metastasis.



**Figure 2.6: Interaction between NK and stromal cells in tumor microenvironment (Hasmim et al., 2015)**



## **2.7 NK and virus infection**

Natural killer (NK) cells play a key role in innate host defense against viral infections. Numerous studies in human and mice model had demonstrated the antiviral role of NK cells that included either direct killing of the infected target cell or production of cytokines that mediated effector response (Vidal et al., 2011, Jost and Altfeld, 2013). Recent studies had shown that activated NK cells accumulated in the liver at the onset of hepatitis B Virus (HBV) infection and secrete antiviral cytokine IFN- $\gamma$  and contribute to HBV clearance (Tong et al., 2017). NK cells had found to mount an effective immune response against Human papilloma virus infection (Zhao et al., 2017). Moreover, severity of H1N1 infection had been correlated with NK cells deficiency; it was observed during a clinical study that percentage of NK cells reduced gradually with symptoms progression but counts returned to normal following the recovery of patients (Fox et al., 2012). Despite the loss of MHC class I on infected cell, viruses had some mechanisms to evade NK cell recognition. Iwasaki and Pillai, 2014 reported that influenza virus evaded the NK cell innate immune defence by directly infecting NK cells and induced cell apoptosis. In another finding, Yoon et al., 2011 suggested that direct interaction of NK cells with HCV-infected cells negatively modulated functional capacity of NK cells which was associated with down-regulation of NK-activating receptors such as NKG2D and NKp30 on NK cell surfaces. The ability of NK cells to secrete IFN- $\gamma$  also diminished after exposure to HCV-infected cells. Therefore, contributed to the establishment of chronic infection. Patients with HHV8 viral infection had shown down-modulated expression of NKp30, NKp46 and CD161 receptors associated with impaired NK-cell cytotoxicity against target cells (Dupuy et al., 2012).

## **2.8 NK cell in fetal implantation**

Human decidua possesses almost 70% of NK cells among total lymphocytes during pregnancy (Feyaerts et al., 2017). They suggested that the higher percentage of NK cells during pregnancy play crucial role in implantation and vascular modification in the decidua, hence are vital for normal pregnancy. Decidual NK cells expressed CMKLR1 (for a chemoattractant, chemerin); CMKLR1/chemerin interaction led to NK cells recruitment to deciduas from periphery and formation of capillary- like tube, therefore mediated vascular remodelling during early pregnancy (Carlino et al., 2012). Extravillous trophoblast (EVT) cells lack HLA-A/B (human leukocyte antigen) expression and expressed non-classical MHC class I molecules HLA-G, which may protected fetal tissues from maternal immune system (Tilburgs et al., 2015b). Interaction between the non-classical class I MHC molecule HLA-G and KIR2DL4 initiated the production of proinflammatory cytokines and proangiogenic factors (Ang1, Ang2, VEGF-A, VEGF-C, IFN- $\gamma$ , and TGF $\beta$ 1) that promoted vascular remodeling as well as induced surface co-expression of HLA-E on trophoblast cells and thus led to a strong inhibitory signals in decidual NK cells through CD94/NKG2A (Tilburgs et al., 2015a). Moreover, uterine NK cells, but not peripheral NK cells, secreted VEGF-C that activated TAP-1 expression on trophoblast cells and thus imparted protection from uterine NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity (Tilburgs et al., 2015b, Ferreira et al., 2017). In line with these studies, Yokota et al., 2013 established that NKp46 expression on uterine NK cells up-regulated the production of cytokines that facilitated normal pregnancy. Hence, during pregnancy there was increased migration of immature NK cells from periphery which underwent significant change in their receptor profile upon interaction with decidual components. Thus, NK cells play a crucial role in spiral artery

remodelling in fetal trophoblast and loss of decidual NK cells may lead to pathological conditions like preeclampsia and recurrent spontaneous abortion (Wallace et al., 2012).

## **2.9 NK cell in autoimmunity**

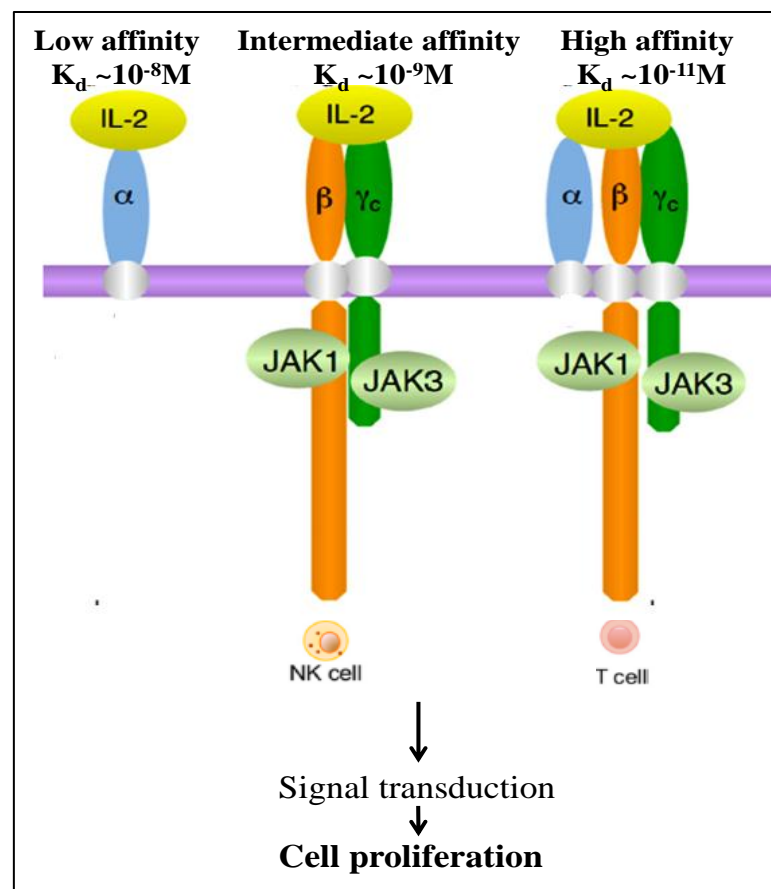
Auto-reactivity and autoimmunity reactions are considered as aggravated immune response to self-cells due to altered function of immune cells. In healthy conditions, normal cells express HLA-I molecules that are recognized by the NK inhibitory receptors and inhibitory signal outweighs the activation thereby avoiding the self-reactivity of NK cells. Various studies have documented the dual role of NK cells in autoimmune diseases as disease-promoting and disease-controlling. Autoimmune disorders were generally associated with impaired function and frequency of NK cells. Reduced NKG2D expressing NK population and impaired function of NK cells resulted in progression of Type I diabetes (Zhang et al., 2017). Moreover, it was observed that expression of NK activating receptor NKG2D was upregulated and there was significant decrease in population of NK cells expressing inhibitory receptor KIR3DL1 in LADA patients as compared to healthy controls (Akesson et al., 2010). NK cells expressed various activating and inhibitory KIRs on their surface that influences the NK cell licensing and cytotoxicity against the targets. Interaction of KIRs with HLA has been seen to be involved in NK mediated protection against various infections. However, same KIR/HLA combination has inclined individuals to certain autoimmune disorders including systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), multiple sclerosis (MS), scleroderma and Type-I diabetes. (Pellett et al., 2007, Fusco et al., 2010, Van der Slik et al., 2007). However, interaction of KIR3DL1 with its ligand HLA-Cw4 marked a strong protective response against MS in African American patients (Hollenbach et al., 2016).

Surprisingly, activating KIR/HLA combination exhibited protective response against an autoimmune blistering skin disease, Pemphigus Foliaceus in urban population of western Brazil (Augusto et al., 2012). Therefore, evidences from studies suggested that NK cells can affect the development of autoimmune disorders as well as provide protection against them and further studies are needed to clarify potential mechanism behind the role of NK cells in disease aggravation and protection from disease.

### **2.10 IL-2 responsiveness of NK cells**

It is well known that administration of Interleukin-2 (IL-2) lead to expansion of TILs and results in complete or apparently curative regression of tumor in cancer patients (Rosenberg et al., 2011, Stevanovic et al., 2015). IL-2 is the one of the key cytokine with multiple effects on immune cells like differentiation of CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells into a variety of subsets, NK cell cytotoxic function, and modulates T-cell function in response to antigen (Jiang et al., 2016). IL-2 is a small cytokine with molecular mass 15.5-kDa. IL-2 is predominantly produced by activated T-cells, NK cells and activated dendritic cells. IL-2 receptor consists of the three subunits IL-2R $\alpha$  (CD25), IL-2R $\beta$  (CD122), and IL-2R $\gamma$  (CD132). IL-2 binds to its receptors with different affinities. IL-2R $\alpha$  binds IL-2 with low-affinity ( $K_d$ - $10^{-8}$  M) and does not transduces intracellular signals and the heterodimeric IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  binds IL-2 with intermediate-affinity ( $K_d$ - $10^{-9}$  M) and results in signal transduction. Combination of all three IL-2 receptor subunits form an IL-2R $\alpha\beta\gamma$  trimeric complex and have highest binding affinity towards IL-2. Small number of resting NK cells expressed IL-2R $\alpha$  on cell surface and IL-2R $\beta$ , IL-2R $\gamma$  subunits are expressed by activated NK cells and T cells. The optimal doses of IL-2 that are able to stimulate NK mediated cytotoxicity are higher than those required for T-cell activation.

This is because IL-2 binds with intermediate affinity to NK cells and high affinity to T-cells (Hodge et al., 2000). Binding of IL-2 to the IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  or IL-2R $\alpha\beta\gamma$  complex initiate activation of signalling pathway cascade which mediate the recruitment of Janus family tyrosine kinases (JAK1 and JAK3) to the cytoplasmic domains of IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  or IL-2R $\alpha\beta\gamma$ . The activation of JAK kinases bring about recruitment and phosphorylation of signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 (STAT1) (Figure 2.7). Eventually, lead to activation of major downstream signalling pathways phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K-AKT), and the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signalling pathways. Activation of these pathways mediates the survival, proliferation, differentiation, activation, cytokine production in different types of immune cells.



**Figure 2.7: Structure of IL-2 receptor** (adapted from Liao et al., 2013)

## **2.11 NK cell based immunotherapies**

Several experimental and clinical evidences have demonstrated the potential role of NK cells in the recognition and eradication of tumors. However, tumors had developed various immunosuppressive mechanisms that eluded NK cell cytotoxicity thereby facilitated tumor progression. Therefore, new therapeutic strategies were focussed at to reverse tumor mediated NK cell suppression, retain their activation potential and accelerate their anti-tumor response. The promising anti-tumor response of NK cell in clinical studies necessitates development of NK cell-based therapy against tumor. The following primary approaches are used for NK cell-based cancer therapy aimed at improving the clinical outcome.

### **2.11.1 Cytokines**

Cytokines are known to be involved in NK cell proliferation and activation. IL-2 is one of the most promising cytokine for boosting NK cell efficacy in cancer treatments. IL-2 has diverse biological actions including ability to proliferate and activate anti-tumor NK cells and T cells. This feature makes it a potent therapeutic agent in cancer treatment. Adoptive Cell therapy (ACT) using IL-2 had proved to be one of the main treatment modalities within cancer immunotherapy, in which tumor infiltrating lymphocytes mostly, T cells were removed from tumor samples and propagated *in-vitro* on IL-2 stimulation (Qian et al., 2014). The expanded and activated lymphocytes were infused into cancer patients with the goal of recognizing, targeting, and destroying tumor cells. Immunotherapy using tumor-specific T-cells was first established by Steven Rosenberg in 1980's and eventually human trials of *ex vivo* expanded TILs had shown promising results when combined with systemic high-dose interleukin-2 (IL-2) in

patients with metastatic melanoma (Rosenberg et al., 2011). Also, infusion of HPV-TILs from Human papilloma virus (HPV) positive patients into cervical cancer patients resulted in cancer regression (Stevanovic et al., 2015). Schleypen and co-workers (2006) separated tumors in two groups based on frequency of infiltrating NK cells in tissues with low NK-TIL and high NK-TIL isolated from renal cell carcinomas and observed that high NK-TIL showed more cytolytic potential against K562 target cells on low dose IL-2 stimulation (Schleypen et al., 2006). Also, It was reported that on high doses of IL-2 administration at regular short intervals, significantly more activated NK (A-NK) cells were accumulated in the tumors and were able to eliminate well established lung metastasis in C57BL/6 mice (Yang et al., 2003). Sarkar and co-workers (2013) had shown that activation of NK cells with IL-2 led to restoration of NK cells cytotoxicity even under hypoxic conditions in multiple myeloma (Sarkar et al., 2013). Modified form of IL-2 called 'super-2' with high affinity towards IL-2R $\beta$  demonstrated an enhanced capacity to expand NK cell population in mice models (Levin et al., 2012). Ghasemi et al., 2016 developed a recombinant fusion protein comprised of combination of mutated IL-2 and cowpox virus encoded NKG2D ligand (OMCP- mutIL-2). Systemic administration of the fusion protein in different mice models reported to promoted the NK cell proliferation and enhanced cytotoxicity of NKG2D<sup>+</sup> NK cells against YAC-1 targets (Ghasemi et al., 2016). Additionally, IL-2 had been used a potential candidate to expand NK cells for adoptive cell transfer therapies (Romee et al., 2016, Yang et al., 2016, Shaffer et al., 2016). Another cytokine involved in NK cell proliferation and activation is IL-15. IL-2 and IL-15 share common receptor  $\beta$  chain and  $\gamma$ c chain (Miller et al., 2015). In a clinical study, bolus intravenous infusion of recombinant IL-15 resulted in redistribution, proliferation and activation of

NK cells in patients with metastatic malignancy (Colnol et al., 2015). Approaches in devising good manufacturing practice (GMP)-compliant used combination of IL-2 and IL-15 that resulted in reduced tumor cell load in NOD/SCID mice transplanted with human AML (Siegler et al., 2010). Cytokines like IL-12 and IL-21 also had shown immunomodulatory effects in clinical trials (Lasek et al., 2014, Croce et al., 2015) but repeated dose regimen had demonstrated some side effects in cancer patients (Floros and Tahini, 2015) . Further studies are required to focus on dose and frequency optimization.

### **2.11.2 Other factors**

Factors like serum supplementation dosage, culture media and expansion platform play important role in enhancing NK yield, activity and efficacy of NK cells. It was observed that NK cells cultivated in large scale bioreactor under feeder-free conditions resulted in significantly higher expansion and demonstrated promising anti-tumor response and in clinical trials of adoptive immunotherapy (Sutlu et al., 2010). In addition, cGMP quality cell culture media was another important factor for NK cell expansion. Usually, media are supplemented with human AB serum or fetal bovine serum such as stem cell growth medium (SCGM; CellGenix, Freiburg, Germany), X-VIVO serum-free media (BioWhittaker, Verviers, Belgium), or AIM V (Life Technologies, Grand Island, NY, USA) (Klingemann et al., 2004, Mckenna et al., 2007, Parkhurst et al., 2011).

### **2.11.3 Adoptive cell transfer therapy**

Clinical trials using autologous adoptive NK cells had proved to be safe and efficient therapy against different tumor targets such as non-small cell lung cancer, breast cancer, glioma renal cell carcinoma, lymphoma, and adenocarcinoma (Lim et al., 2015). ACT



therapies utilized patient-specific autologous or HLA-matched allogeneic lymphocytes which were activated *in vitro* with stimulation of cytokines; growth factors including IL-2, IL-12, GM-CSF (Qian et al., 2014). Administration of Hsp70 peptide+IL-2 activated autologous NK cells displayed higher cytotoxicity against Hsp70 membrane-positive colon carcinoma cells and NSCLC (Specht et al., 2015). However, adoptive transfer of autologous NK did not showed remarkable regression in tumor growth such as relapsed lymphoma metastatic, melanoma and renal cell carcinoma (Rezvani and Rouce, 2015). Later, in a clinical trial, NK cells were expanded *ex vivo* with IL-2 and OK-432 stimulation. Infusion of expanded NK cells in patients diagnosed with advanced digestive cancer resulted in better clinical outcome with no adverse effects (Sakamoto et al., 2015). Using allogeneic NK cells has the risk of developing graft-versus-host disease (GvHD), so it is strictly necessary to adopt measures to avoid such complications like depletion of CD3<sup>+</sup> T cells (Simonetta et al., 2017). However, patients infused with *ex vivo* expanded HLA-mismatched NK have shown better survival with no side effects (Martin-Antonia et al., 2017). In comparison to autologous or allogeneic NK cells, the NK cell lines expanded under GMP conditions had found to be better and safe candidates for clinical adoptive therapy. NK-92 cells were the only ones among all NK cell line to be approved by FDA for investigational treatment of advanced malignant melanoma and renal cell carcinoma patients. However, KHYG-1 cells and NKL cells had shown more cytotoxicity against tumors than NK-92 cells (Qian et al., 2014) making them potential candidates holding a therapeutic promise.

#### **2.11.4 Genetically modified NK cells**

Genetic modification is the most promising strategy to design more efficacious NK therapy products. Since, NK cells are resistant to retroviruses, the limitation of gene

delivery was overcome by targeting intracellular viral defense mechanism and increasing transduction efficiency by using inhibitors molecule (Brandstadter et al., 2011, Sutlu et al., 2012). Therefore, genetic modification of NK cells would help in designing cytokine transgene, increased specificity, over-expressed activating receptors and silenced inhibitory receptors to contribute towards enhanced anti-tumor activity.

### **2.11.5 Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs)**

Another promising tool to manipulate anti-cancer immune response is to devise tumor specific mAbs targeting the tumor cells that bind to the Fc $\gamma$ RIIIa receptor (CD16a) on the NK cell, results in ADCC response. Various mAbs such as anti-CD20 (Rituximab), anti-Her2 (Trastuzumab), anti-CD52 (Alemtuzumab), anti-EGFR (Cetuximab), and anti-CD38 (Daratumumab) have been developed for targeting specific tumor antigens (Mentlik-James et al., 2013). Daratumumab treatment showed mild infusion-related reactivity, overall good response rate with reduced bone marrow plasma cell levels of patients with relapsed myeloma (Lokhorst et al., 2015). In clinical trials, second generation humanized anti-CD20 antibody, Veltuzumab considered safe at all tested doses with no adverse effects in patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) (Morschhauser et al., 2009, Kalaycio et al., 2016). Third-generation anti-CD20 mAbs, obinutuzumab, ocaratuzumab and ublituximab had designed to show increased binding affinity to CD16a, thus aims at more efficient NK mediated cytotoxicity of tumors (Le Garff-Tavernier et al., 2011, Kern et al., 2013, Cheney et al., 2014). Treatment of obinutuzumab in patients with CLL and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma had considered as safe, effective monotherapy and overall response rate was higher than rituximab (Wierda et al., 2011, Sehn et al., 2015).

### **2.11.6 Bi-specific and tri-specific antibodies**

In this method, Fab fragment of the antibody targeting the tumor cell antigen is fused in combination with another Fab region recognizing CD16 on NK cell, results in activation of NK cell. It was observed that fully humanized bi-specific killer engagers (BiKE) CD16 × CD33 were able to produce cytokines and triggered effective NK cytotoxicity against acute myeloid leukaemia targets (Wiernik et al., 2013). Similarly, BiKE CD16 × CD33 reported to stimulate NK activation and significant increase in secretion of IFN- $\gamma$  and TNF $\alpha$  against Myelodysplastic syndromes CD33+ targets (Gleason et al., 2014). In addition, tri-specific killer engagers (TriKE) had been constructed by incorporating modified IL-15 as cross-linker between single chain Fv against CD16 and CD33 (designated as 161533) to increase NK cell specificity, viability and expansion. TriKE directed enhanced cytotoxicity and cytokine stimulation against CD33 targets than BiKE, rendered it more promising anti-cancer tool (Miller et al., 2015, Schmohl et al., 2016).

### **2.11.7 Chimeric antigen receptors (CARs)**

CARs were developed by fusing tumor antigen antibodies with intracellular lymphocyte stimulatory molecules (CD3 $\xi$ , CD28, 4-1BB) that led to high- affinity specific recognition of tumor antigens and tumors. Although CARs considered as promising approach but only few studies using NK-CARs were under clinical trial had been approved (Suck et al., 2016). Therefore, there is need to standardize the construct design, specifically intracellular stimulatory adapter molecules in order to elicit more efficient anti-tumor response by NK cells.

### **2.11.8 Immunomodulatory drugs (iMiDs)**

IMiDs like thalidomide, lenalidomide, and pomalidomide are known to involve in both NK cells and T cells stimulation, leading to better targeting tumors (Shortt et al., 2013). Lenalidomide enhance expression of TRAIL molecules on NK cells and thus cytotoxicity (Jungkunz-Stier et al., 2014). Combination of anti-inhibitory KIR antibody (IPH2101) and lenalidomide resulted in increased NK proliferation and activation of NK cells against targets (Bensen et al., 2015).

### **2.11.9 Combination treatment**

Immunosuppressive effects of tumors can be combated by the increasing the efficacy of immunotherapy by combining the NK therapy with the other products. Combination of NK cells with drugs or immunomodulatory drugs had been extensively studied in different tumors and had shown promising anti-tumor effect (Veluchamy et al., 2016). Another way to boost NK cytotoxicity was to combine drug therapy with NK cell stimulating cytokines such as IL-2, IL-12, IL-15, and IL-21 (Romee et al., 2014). It was observed that combination of high dose fludarabin and cyclophosphamide and administration of IL-2 resulted in *in vivo* expansion NK cells led to complete remission of malignancy in patients with AML (Miller et al., 2005).

*Chapter 3*  
*Materials and Methods*

---

## CHAPTER 3

### MATERIALS AND METHODS

---

### 3.1 Materials

#### 3.1.1 Chemicals and Reagents

**Table 3.1: List of chemicals and reagents**

Biochemicals, Chemicals and Reagents	Brand/ Manufacturer
2-mercaptoethanol	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Acrylamide	Himedia, India
Ammonium per sulphate	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Anti-alpha-tubulin	GeneTex, USA
Anti-cadherin	GeneTex, USA
Bicinchoninic Acid	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Bovine Serum Albumin (BSA)	Merk, India
Copper (II) Sulphate pentahydrate	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Dithiothreitol	Himedia, India
Dulbecco's Modified - Eagle's Medium (DMEM) with high glucose	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Ethyleneglycol-bis( $\beta$ -aminoethylether)-N,N',N'-tetraacetic acid (EGTA)	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA)	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Fetal bovine Serum (FBS)	Gibco, Life Technologies, USA
FITC anti-mouse NK1.1	BD biosciences, USA
Glycerol	Thermo Fisher scientific, India
Glycine	Himedia, India
HEPES	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
HRP Goat anti-mouse Ig	BD biosciences, USA
HRP Rabbit anti-mouse IgG	BD biosciences, USA
Magnesium Chloride ( $MgCl_2$ )	Himedia, India
Membrane filter	Millipore, Merk
Methanol	Thermo Fisher scientific, India

## *Materials and Methods*

Biochemicals, Chemicals and Reagents	Brand/ Manufacturer
Mouse IFN- $\gamma$ DuoSet Elisa Kit	R&D systems, USA
Mouse MIP-1 $\alpha$ DuoSet Elisa Kit	R&D systems, USA
Mouse NK cell enrichment Kit	Stem cell technologies, Canada
NK purification Magnet	Stem cell technologies, Canada
Nystatin	MP Biomedicals, France
PE anti-mouse Ly49A	BD biosciences, USA
PE anti-mouse Ly49C	BD biosciences, USA
PE anti-mouse Ly49D	BD biosciences, USA
PE anti-mouse NK1.1	BD biosciences, USA
Penicillin	MP Biomedicals, France
Ponceau S	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Potassium Chloride	Himedia, India
Potassium dihydrogen Phosphate	Himedia, India
Pre-stained protein Ladder	BIOCHEM, Life Sciences
Protease Inhibitor	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Purified Mouse Anti- $\beta$ -Catenin	BD biosciences, USA
PVDF membrane	MDI, India
Recombinant Human IL-2	Biolegend, USA
RPMI-1640	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Sodium Chloride	Himedia, India
Sodium deoxycholate	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Sodium dihydrogen Phosphate	Himedia, India
Sodium dodecyl sulphate (SDS)	Himedia, India
Sodium Pyruvate	Sigma-Aldrich, USA
Streptomycin Sulfate	MP Biomedicals, France
Sulphuric Acid	Thermo Fisher scientific, India
Tetramethylbenzidine	R&D system, USA
Tetramethylethylenediamine (TEMED)	Thermo Fisher Scientific, India
Transwell Plates	Corning, USA
Tris HCl	Himedia, India
Trypan Blue	Gibco, Life Technologies
Tween 20	Sigma-Aldrich, USA

All other chemicals were of analytical grade.

**Table 3.2: List of buffers/solutions**

Reagents/Buffers	Composition
4 % PFA (fixative)	4 % paraformaldehyde (v/v) in 1X PBS
Blocking Buffer	5 % (w/v) BSA in 1X PBST
Blocking buffer	1% BSA in PBS, pH 7.2-7.4
De-staining solution	30 % (v/v) methanol and 10 % (v/v) acetic acid
Laemmili buffer (2 X)	2% (w/v) SDS, 5% (v/v) 2-mercaptoethanol , 10% (v/v) glycerol and 0.004% (w/v) bromophenol blue, 0.5M EDTA
Nuclear Lysis (NL) buffer	50mM Tris HCl, 150mM NaCl, 1% NP-40, 0.5% sodium deoxycholate and 0.1% SDS. 10% glycerol and 1X PI cocktail were added to 10ml of NL buffer at the time of use
Phosphate buffered saline	NaCl 138 mM, KCl 2.7 mM, Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub> 4.3 mM, KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 1.5 mM (pH 7.4)
Ponceau S staining solution	2% Ponceau S in 30 % trichloroacetic acid
SDS-Running Buffer (1X)	Tris glycine Buffer which contains 25mM Tris base, 250 mM glycine (electrophoresis grade) (pH 8.3), 0.1% SDS
Staining solution	0.25 % (w/v) coommasie R 250 in 50 % (v/v) methanol and 10 % (v/v) Glacial acetic acid
Sub-cellular fractionation (SF) buffer	Sucrose, Tris, 1mM EDTA, 1mM EGTA, 10mM KCl, 20mM HEPES, 1.5mM MgCl <sub>2</sub> . 1mM Dithiothreitol (DTT) and 1X protease inhibitor (PI) cocktail were added to 10ml of SF buffer at the time of use
Transfer buffer	Tris 25Mm, Glycine 192mM, methanol 20%; SDS 0.1%
Wash buffer	0.05% Tween 20 in PBS, pH 7.2-7.4

**Table 3.3: Resolving gel composition (for 10 mL)**

Components	For 10% gel (ml)	For 12% gel (ml)
Water	4.0	3.3
30% Acrylamide solution	3.3	4.0
1.5 M Tris (pH 8.8)	2.5	2.5
10 % Ammonium per sulphate	0.1	0.1
10 % SDS	0.1	0.1
TEMED	0.004	0.004



**Table 3.4: Stacking gel composition**

Components	5 (ml)	10 (ml)
Water	3.4	6.8
30 % Acrylamide solution	0.83	1.7
1.0 M Tris (pH 6.8)	0.63	1.25
10 % Ammonium per sulphate	0.05	0.1
10 % SDS	0.05	0.1
TEMED	0.005	0.01

### 3.1.2 Equipments and instruments

**Table 3.5: List of equipments and instruments**

Equipment / Instrument	Manufacturer
Centrifuge	REMI
CO <sub>2</sub> Incubator	Thermo Fisher Scientific, USA
Electronic Balance	Mettler Toledo, India
ELISA reader	Bio-Tek, Winooski, USA
Flow cytometer	BD biosciences, USA
Gel documentation system	MiniBIS-Pro Bio Imaging system
Inverted microscope	Olympus CKX41, Japan
Light Microscope	Olympus BX 60
pH meter	Hanna
Refrigerated centrifuge	Galaxy Lab Instruments, India
SDS-PAGE assembly	BIO-RAD, USA
Ultracentrifuge	Beckman coulter
Western Blot apparatus	BIO-RAD, USA

## 3.2 Methodology

### 3.2.1 Preparation of cells culture medium

Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium with 2mM L-glutamine and glucose 4.5 g/l supplied as dry powder was dissolved in 900ml Milli-Q water and supplemented with 25mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. Thereafter, 10mM HEPES 1mM Sodium pyruvate and antibiotics viz. penicillin, streptomycin sulfate and antimycotic viz. nystatin was added at a

concentration of 50Units/ml, 50µg/ml and 2µg/ml respectively. Final pH was adjusted to 7.4. The medium was filtered using membrane filter assembly (0.22 µm) syringe. The sterility was routinely checked by incubating the medium at 37°C for 72h. The medium was thereafter stored at 4°C. Growth medium was finally prepared by addition of 10% FBS (heat inactivated) to the filter sterilized medium.

RPMI medium with 2mM L-glutamine supplied as dry powder was dissolved in 900ml Milli-Q water and supplemented with 25mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. Thereafter, 10mM HEPES, 1mM Sodium pyruvate and antibiotics *viz.* penicillin, streptomycin sulfate and antimycotic *viz.* nystatin was added at a concentration of 50Units/ml, 50µg/ml and 2µg/ml respectively. Final pH was adjusted to 7.4. The medium was filtered using membrane filter assembly (0.22 µm) syringe. The sterility was routinely checked by incubating the medium at 37°C for 72h. The medium was thereafter stored at 4°C. Growth medium was finally prepared by addition of 10% FBS (heat inactivated) to the filter sterilized medium.

### **3.2.2 Maintenance of cell culture**

P815 is mastocytoma cell line was obtained from School of Life Sciences, Jawaharlal University (JNU), Delhi, India. The cells were routinely cultured and maintained in DMEM with high glucose at 37°C temperature under 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere and 95% humidity supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS. Cells were passaged 2-3 times per week for maintaining them in healthy log phase. Cell growth was estimated by counting cells with the help of hemocytometer at different time intervals.

YAC-1 cell line was procured from NCCS, Pune, India. Stock cells were routinely cultured and maintained as a monolayer culture in RPMI at 37°C temperature under 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere and 95% humidity supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS. Cells were passaged 2-3 times per week for maintaining them in healthy log phase.

### **3.2.3 Experimental animal model**



Animals used in the experiments were 6-8 weeks old, male C57BL/6 mice weighing  $25.0 \pm 2.0$  gm. Animals were issued by the Institutional Animal Facility (IAF), Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Allied Sciences (INMAS), Delhi under MoU with Delhi Technological University. All animals were maintained under controlled conditions of temperature ( $28.0 \pm 5.0^\circ\text{C}$ ), humidity (55%) and light 12:12h of light and dark period. The animals had free access to sterile water and food (Amrut Laboratory Animal Feed, Pranav Agro Industries Ltd., Pune, India) *ad libitum*. Animals were housed in polypropylene cages containing sterile paddy husk (procured locally) as bedding throughout the experiments. Animals were kept under observation and weighed daily for a week before experiments initiation. The animals not appearing healthy or inactive, sluggish or observed to lose their weight were not included in the experiments. All experiments were performed in accordance with the recommendations of the Institutional Animal Ethics Committee (IAEC).

### **3.2.4 NK cell preparation**

Spleens were removed aseptically from C57BL/6 mice and disrupted in recommended medium (PBS+2% FBS + 1mM EDTA). The cell suspension was

then passed through a 70µm nylon mesh filter to remove unwanted debris and clumps to prepare single-cell suspension. The cell suspension was then washed with recommended media and splenocytes were re-suspended in fresh recommended media. Erythrocytes were lysed by using RBC lysis buffer and NK cells were isolated from these splenocytes through EasySep™ Mouse NK Cell Enrichment Kit through negative selection kit. In brief, 50µl of NK cell enrichment cocktail was added to splenocytes cell suspension with concentration of  $1 \times 10^8$  cells/ml. After, mixing, the cells were incubated at room temperature (RT) (18-25°C) for 15min. Further, 200µl of biotin selection cocktail was added, mixed and incubated for 15min at RT. In the next step, 200µl of magnetic particles were added, mixed, incubated for 10min at RT and the cell suspension was brought to 2.5ml volume by adding recommended media. The cells were then mixed gently by pipetting and tube (without cap) was placed into the magnet for 5min. The desired fraction was poured in one continuous motion into the new tube and magnetically labelled unwanted cells were remained inside the original tube. The purity of NK cells was measured by staining cells with antibodies against NK cells marker (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1) and T-cell marker (APC anti-mouse CD3).

### **3.2.5 Evaluation of cell viability**

The viability of NK cells and tumor cell lines was evaluated by trypan blue exclusion method (Strober, 2001). In which, 0.4% trypan blue dye was added to the cell suspension and number of dead and live cells were counted using haemocytometer. The live cells with intact membrane excluded the dye while dead cells did not, so appeared blue. The percentage of viable cells was counted by dividing the number of viable cells by the number of total cells and multiplying by 100.

### **3.2.6 Staining and flow cytometry**

IL-2 stimulated and unstimulated NK cells were adjusted to the concentration of  $0.5 \times 10^6$  cells/ml. The antibodies anti-Ly49A and anti-Ly49C conjugated with PE, anti-Ly49D and anti-NK1.1 conjugated with FITC were diluted to 1:100 in PBS. After mAb staining for 30 min at 4°C, cells were washed with and re-suspended in ice-cold PBS buffer. All flow cytometry data were acquired using FACS LSR flow cytometer (BD Biosciences).

### **3.2.7 Isolation of Membrane fraction from cell lines**

Membrane fractions from P815 cell line were isolated by using the modified protocol utilized in publication by Huang et al., 2012. The cells were cultured in T-25 tissue culture flask until 80% confluent at 37°C with 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. Cells were then washed with ice-cold PBS and suspended in SF buffer. The cell lysate were then agitated at 30-50rpm on tube roller and then centrifuged at 720xg at 4 °C for 5 min. The supernatant was collected and centrifuged at 10,000xg at 4 °C for 10 min. The supernatant was collected and ultracentrifuged at 100,000x g at 4 °C for 1 h. The pellet was re-suspended in SF buffer and ultracentrifuged at 100,000x g at 4 °C for 1 h. The supernatant was removed and the pellet was re-suspended in NL buffer, which contain membrane fraction. The total protein concentration of the isolated membrane fractions were quantified by BCA method (Smith et al., 1985). Absorbance values were determined at 562 nm on spectrophotometer. Purity of isolated membrane fractions were analysed by western blot technique using beta-catenin, cadherin, alpha-tubulin as internal controls. In this technique, the membrane and cytosolic fractions were separated on the SDS-PAGE on the basis of molecular weight. In the next step, the

separated proteins were transferred out of the gel to PVDF membrane (0.45µm). The transferred proteins were then verified by staining with Ponceau S staining solution for 5min incubation. After appearance of clear bands on PVDF membrane, the membranes were de-stained using PBST buffer. After electro-transfer of protein to a membrane, the blots were blocked to prevent non-specific binding with blocking buffer for 45min at 20-30rpm. On completion of incubation, the blocking buffer was removed by washing with PBST. Thereafter, diluted primary antibody (1:1000) specific either for cadherin (anti-mouse cadherin), alpha-tubulin (anti-mouse alpha tubulin), beta-catenin (anti-mouse beta-catenin) were added to each blot with cytosolic and membrane fractions and kept for overnight incubation at 4<sup>0</sup>C. Thereafter, blots were washed with PBST two times for 5min. After washing, diluted HRP conjugated secondary antibody (1:2000) specific for primary antibody was added to the blots and incubated for 1.5h at 20-30rpm at RT. Blots were then washed three times for 10min. Then, the blots were detected using Electrochemiluminescence (ECL) reagents, A:B (1:1). These reagents identify the HRP enzyme conjugated to the secondary antibody and catalyze the ECL reaction and produce light. The proteins bands were then detected on transilluminator (DNR MiniBis-Pro).

### **3.2.8 Estimation of IFN-γ, and MIP-1α cytokines secretion using ELISA**

Quantitative estimation of cytokines was carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions using ELISA (RandD Systems). In brief, the plates were coated by adding 100µl/well of capture antibody to the 96-well plates. The plates were sealed and incubated overnight at room temperature (RT). Upon completion of incubation period, the plates were aspirated and washed three times with wash buffer by firmly tapping

the plates upside down on absorbent paper. The plates were then blocked by adding 300µl/well blocking buffer and incubated at RT for 1h. Thereafter, plates were aspirated and washed three times. In the next step, 100µl/well of standards and test samples were added to the coated plates. The plates were sealed and incubated for 2h at RT. Upon completion of incubation period, samples were aspirated and plates washed three times with wash buffer. 100µl of diluted detection antibody specific either to IFN- $\gamma$  or MIP-1 $\alpha$ ) was added to each well sealed and incubated for 2h at RT. Thereafter, plates were washed again four times with wash buffer. Then 100µl of diluted Streptavidin-HRP solution (1:40) was added to each well, sealed and incubated for 20 minutes at RT. Plates were washed again 4 times with wash buffer. Then, 100µl of substrate solution (1:1 H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: Tetramethylbenzidine (TMB) was added and incubated in the dark for 20 minutes. Positive wells should turn bluish in colour upon incubation with this step. Chromogenic reaction was stopped by adding 50µl of stop solution (2N H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) to each well. Positive wells should turn from blue to yellow. Final absorbance was read at 450nm within 20 minutes of stopping reaction. Quantitative estimation of the expression of individual cytokine (IFN- $\gamma$ , MIP-1 $\alpha$ ) was carried out by extrapolation in terms of pg/ml of protein obtained from a standard curve prepared in parallel using standard of individual cytokines supplied along with the individual kit.

### **3.2.9 Prediction of 3D structures of NK receptors and ligands**

The structures of NK receptors and NK receptor complex and HLA ligand were retrieved from RCSB Protein Data Bank (Table 3.6) while structure of NK receptor KIR2DL1, classical HLA molecules were not available so they were predicted through

*de novo* method using Iterative Threading ASSEmblY Refinement (I-TASSER). I-TASSER is web-based protein 3D structure prediction tool based on threading approach. It simulates the generated structure and defines its C-score, TM-score, and active sites. C-score refers to a confidence level of predicted structure of a given protein sequences where a high C-score (range from -5 to 2) indicates an absolute precise quality of the predicted structure. TM-score is structural assessment parameter in which, a smaller distance between the structures is weighted high. TM-score defines the topology of the structure, and it shows that a score more than 0.5 ensures a model of absolute topology (Yang et al., 2015).

Generated 3D structures were further refined by using 3Drefine, a webserver that involves optimization of hydrogen bonding network combined with atomic-level energy minimization of optimized model (Bhattacharya et al., 2016) and GalaxyRefine server which rebuilds all side-chain conformations and repeatedly relaxes the structure by short molecular dynamics simulations (Lim et al., 2013). Structures with lowest RMSD value were selected for protein-protein interactions.

**Table 3.6: List of NK receptors, ligand and complex structures available on PDB**

	Resolution (Å)	PDB entry	Reference
<b>Receptors</b>			
KIR2DL2	2.9	2DL2	Snyder et al., 1999
NKG2A/CD94	2.5	3BDW	Sullivan et al., 2007
<b>Ligands</b>			
HLA-G	1.9	1YDP	Clements et al., 2005
<b>NK receptors-HLA complex</b>			
NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E	2.5	3CDG	Petrie et al., 2008
KIR2DL2/HLA-Cw3	3.0	1EFX	Boyington et al., 2000
KIR2DL1/HLA-Cw4	2.8	1IM9	Fan et al., 2001



### **3.2.10 Molecular docking of NK receptor–ligand complex**

Interaction analysis of NK receptors and their putative ligand were predicted by ClusPro protein–protein molecular docking program. ClusPro server is a rigid docking program based on fast Fourier transformation, which clusters the interaction complexes with low energy and identifies the stability of the interaction clusters using the medium-range optimization algorithm. Resulting top docking score NK receptor–ligand were selected, and its docked complex were analysed to determine the molecular interactions.

### **3.2.11 Receptor-Ligand interaction analysis**

NK receptor–ligand interactions in terms of Hydrogen bonds, non-hydrophobic interactions, Sulphide bonds, salt-bridges were analysed by using PDBsum server. Further, interface residues involved in interactions were determined by PDBsum. NK receptor–ligand complexes were evaluated for its stereo-chemical properties through Ramachandran plot using PDBsum (Procheck). Ramachandran plot determines the dihedral angles [ $\phi$  ( $\Phi$ ) and  $\psi$  ( $\Psi$ )], and the number of residues lying in favoured, allowed, and outlier regions of the protein structure (Laskowski et al., 2001).

## **3.3 Statistical Analysis**

All experiments were repeated at least three times and data obtained were expressed as mean $\pm$ standard deviation. The variation between the control and test groups was estimated. Significant variation between these groups were determined by one-way ANOVA (one way analysis of variance) followed by bon ferroni test.  $p < 0.05$  was considered significant across the entire experimental groups.

*Chapter 4*  
*Results*

---

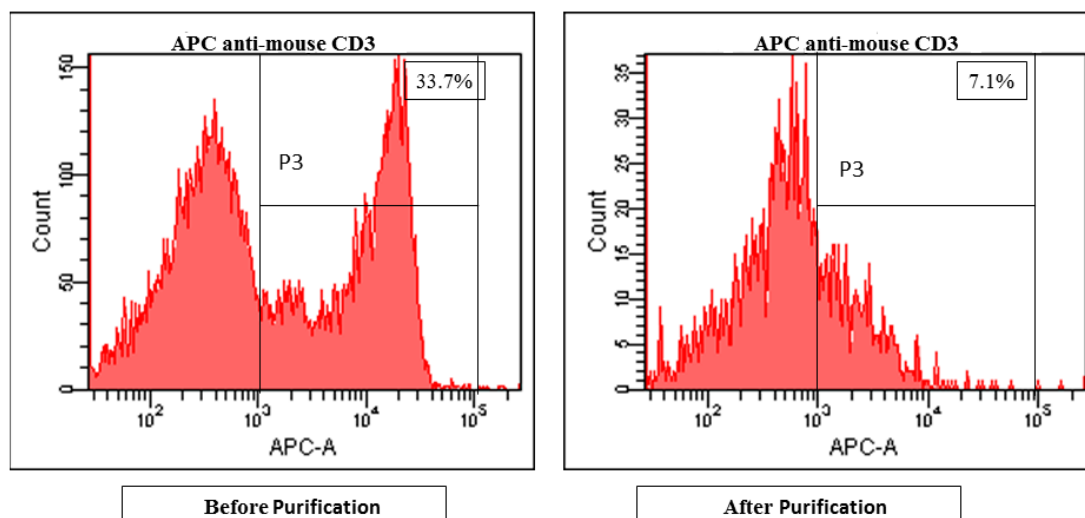
## CHAPTER 4

### RESULTS

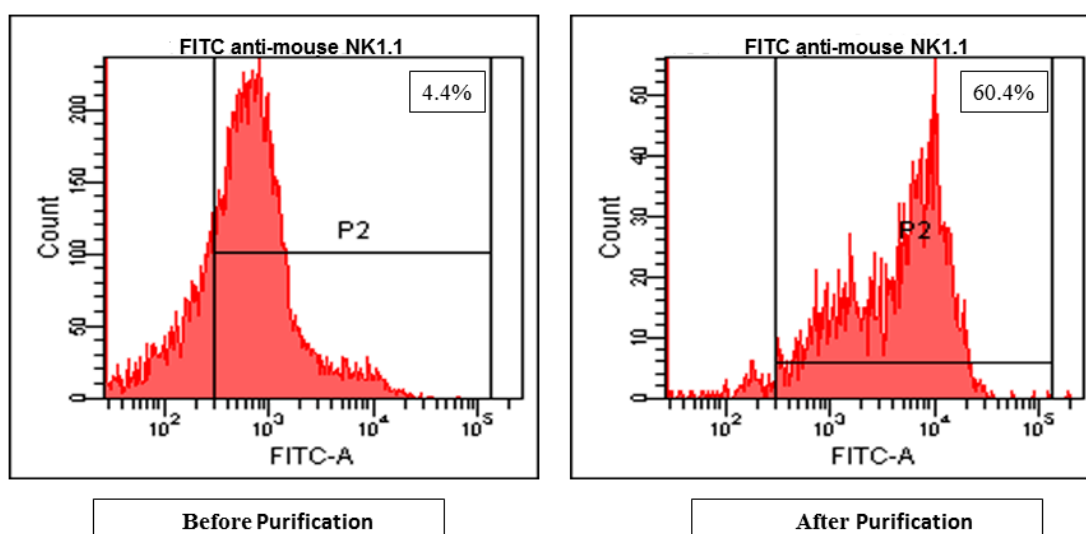
---

#### 4.1 NK cell isolation

NK cells were isolated from C57BL/6 mice splenocytes through EasySep™ Mouse NK Cell Enrichment Kit. The EasySep™ Mouse NK Cell Enrichment Kit was designed to isolate NK cells from single cell suspensions of splenocytes by negative selection upon depletion of non-NK cells, using antibody cocktail for non-NK cells (T-cells, B-cells, DCs and other non-NK). The non-NK cells were specifically labelled with dextran-coated magnetic particles using biotinylated monoclonal antibodies cocktail against cell surface antigens expressed on the unwanted cells, and bispecific tetrameric antibody complexes (TAC). The TAC binds to both dextran and biotin, small sized magnetic dextran allow efficient binding to the TAC-labelled cells. Magnetically labelled non-NK cells were then separated from unlabelled target NK cells by magnetic separation. Purity of NK cells was quantified by flow cytometry after staining with fluorochrome-conjugated antibodies against NK marker NK1.1 and T-cell marker CD3 (FITC anti-CD49b and APC anti- CD3 respectively). NK1.1 represent NKR-P1C gene and is the most characteristic serological marker expressed on murine NK cells. The PK136 mAb (anti-NK1.1) that reacts with the NKR-P1C gene product was used to detect NK cells before and after purification upon staining with anti-mouse NK1.1 and anti-mouse CD3 (Figure 4.1a and 4.1b). Purified NK population comprised of CD3 depleted and NK1.1 expressing cells (NK1.1<sup>+</sup>CD3<sup>-</sup>). The purity of NK cells was 92.7%.



**Figure 4.1a: Purification of NK cells.** Splenocytes subjected to purification (negative selection) were stained for CD3<sup>+</sup> cells (APC anti-mouse CD3). Left panel shows population before purification and right panel show population after purification.

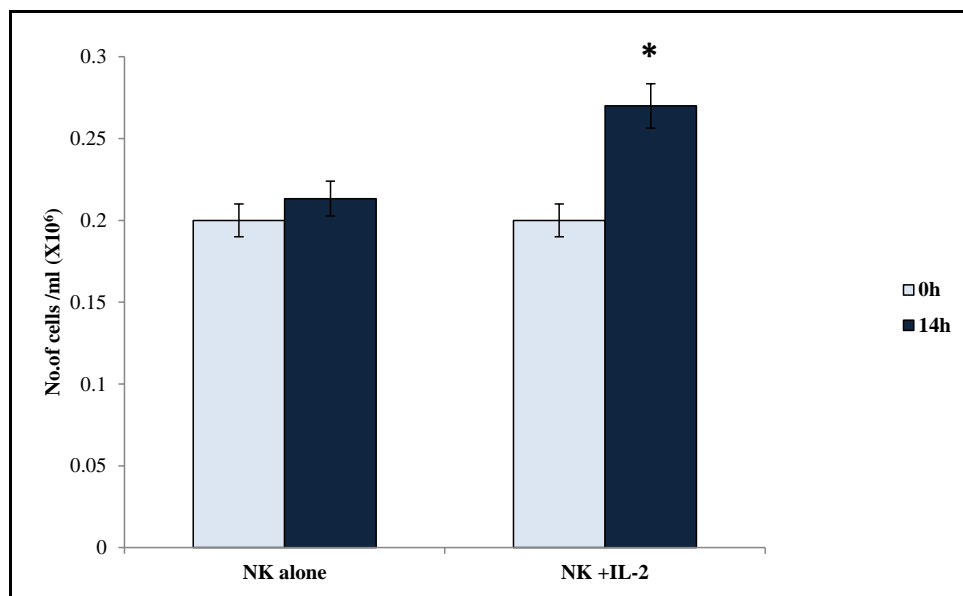


**Figure 4.1b: Purification of NK cells.** Splenocytes subjected to purification (negative selection) were stained for NK1.1<sup>+</sup> cells (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1). Left panel shows population before purification and right panel show population after purification.

## 4.2 Expansion of NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation

IL-2 is one of the key cytokine with multiple effects on immune cells like proliferation and differentiation of CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells and NK cells into a variety of subsets, modulation of

T-cell function in response to antigen and NK cell cytotoxic function. NK cells have IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  receptor and hence IL-2 binds with intermediate affinity to NK cells and optimal doses of IL-2 were able to stimulate NK cell expansion (mentioned in section 2.10). Therefore, in our study, purified NK cells were stimulated with IL-2 (100U) and NK cell proliferation and viability was evaluated by trypan blue exclusion method. The cells were counted by haemocytometer on overnight incubation at 37<sup>0</sup>C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. A definitive increase in NK cell population was observed upon IL-2 stimulation in comparison to un-induced controls (p<0.05) (Figure 4.2).



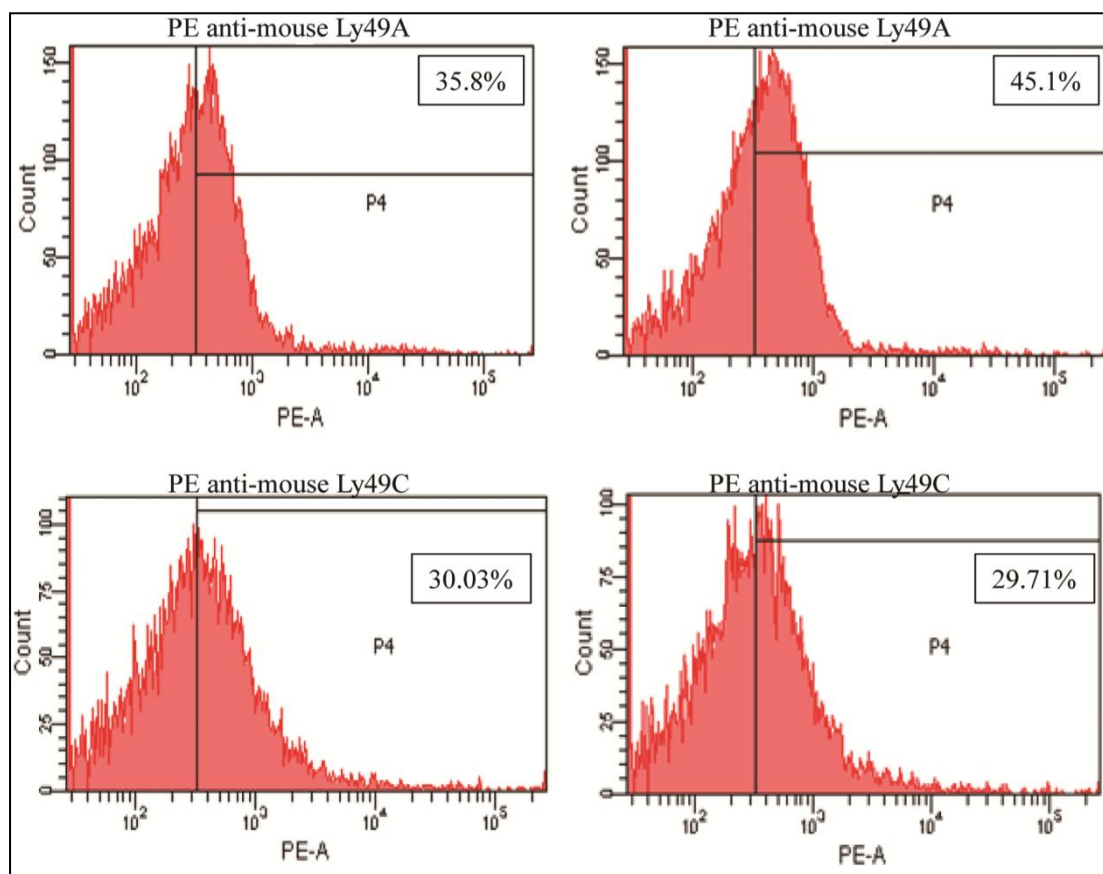
**Figure 4.2: Viable cell count upon IL-2 stimulation of NK cells.** Viable NK cell count at 0h and 14h incubation in absence (NK alone) and presence (NK+IL-2) of IL-2 (\*p<0.05). Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.

### 4.3 Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell inhibitory receptor profile

NK cells are known to be responsive to IL-2 and in tumor microenvironment *in situ*, tumor infiltrating lymphocyte stimulation leads to IL-2 secretion by T cells and hence

## Results

we wanted to study the effect of IL-2 stimulation upon NK receptor expression profile. Since, IL-2 stimulation resulted in proliferation of population of NK cells (Figure 4.2), we wanted to explore the effect of IL-2 stimulation on the expression level of inhibitory receptors. Effect of IL-2 stimulation was studied on inhibitory NK cell receptors, Ly49A and Ly49C, (Figure 4.3).



**Figure 4.3: Effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell inhibitory receptors.** The upper panels describe the expression of Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), while lower panels depict the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on purified NK cells in absence (left panels) and presence of IL-2 (right panels).

It was observed that the expression of inhibitory receptor Ly49A increased upon stimulation with IL-2 ( $p < 0.05$ ) while there was no significant alteration in inhibitory receptor Ly49C expression (Table 4.1). It may be noted that C57BL/6 mice used in this

study had MHC haplotype H2b. Ly49A is the cognate inhibitory receptor for H2k and H2d. While Ly49C is the cognate receptor for H2b. The NK harvested from C57BL/6 mice had H2b background and hence our results showed that IL-2 induced a more pronounced stimulation of inhibitory receptor expression on non-cognate inhibitory receptor, as compared to the cognate receptor.

**Table 4.1: Percentage of activating and inhibitory receptors expressing NK cells in absence (NK alone) and presence (NK+IL-2) of IL-2**

NK receptor	NK alone*	NK+IL-2*
Ly49A	35.8	45.1
Ly49C	30.03	29.71
Ly49D	32	32.6
NK1.1	10.9	30.2

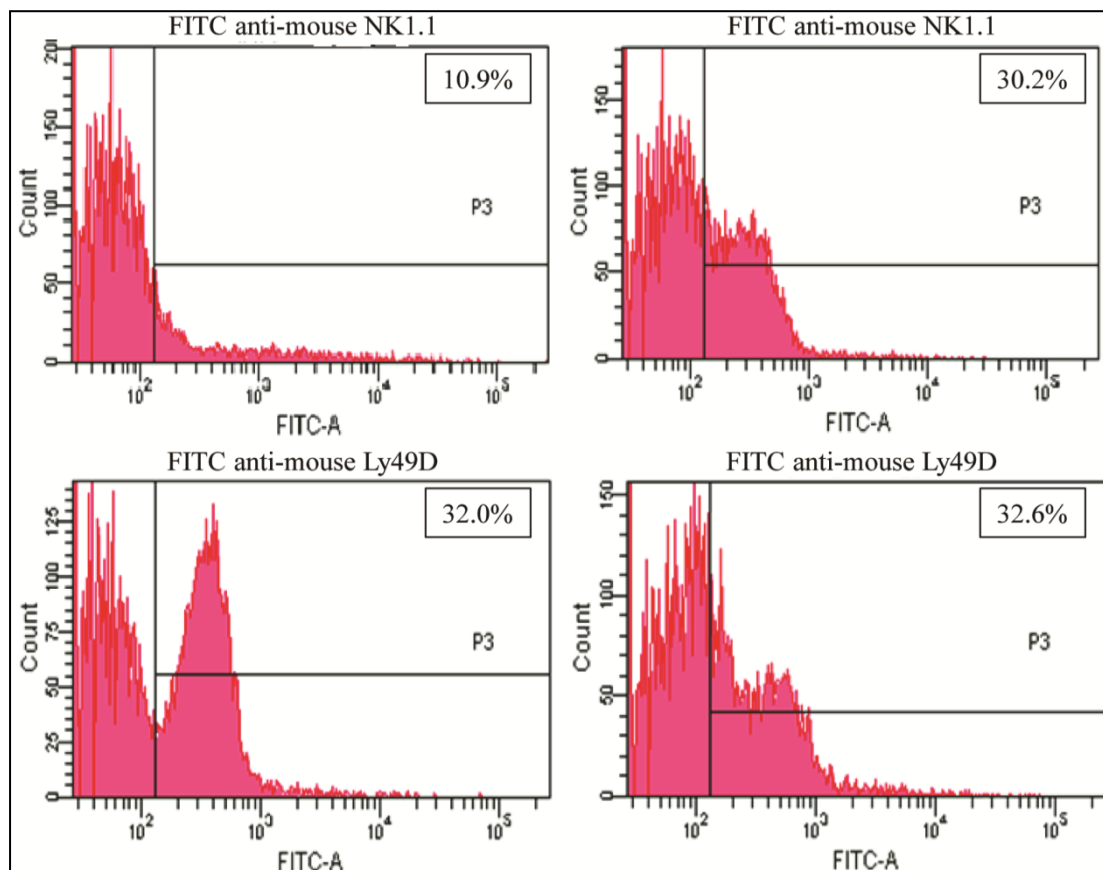
\*Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.

#### **4.4 Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell activating receptor profile**

IL-2 is known to induce NK cell proliferation therefore, we wanted to explore if IL-2 stimulation also resulted in increased NK activating receptor expression and thus modulated NK cytolytic potential. So, role of IL-2 induced NK cell proliferation was studied in the context of expression level of activating receptors on NK cells. We noticed a significant increase in expression level of a pan-NK marker, NK1.1 (Figure 4.4). However, there was no significant increase in the expression of Ly49D upon IL-2 stimulation of NK cells ( $p>0.05$ ). Thus, IL-2 stimulation resulted in NK cell expansion but did not cause upregulation of activation receptor, Ly49D expression. Figure 4.4 shows that there was no significant change in Ly49D expression on per cell basis upon

## Results

IL-2 stimulation. Further, a drop in peak was observed, which also signified a decrease in per cell basis of Ly49D expression despite proliferation of NK cells. We hypothesize that this was a significant strategy employed by the immune system to ensure that proliferative stimulation of NK cells did not result in hyper-responsiveness of NK cells. In the context of any infection and stimulation of T cells, there would be a local increase in the levels of IL-2, however although this would result in significant expansion of functional NK cells, such NK cells were not hyperactive or potentially deleterious to self-cells.

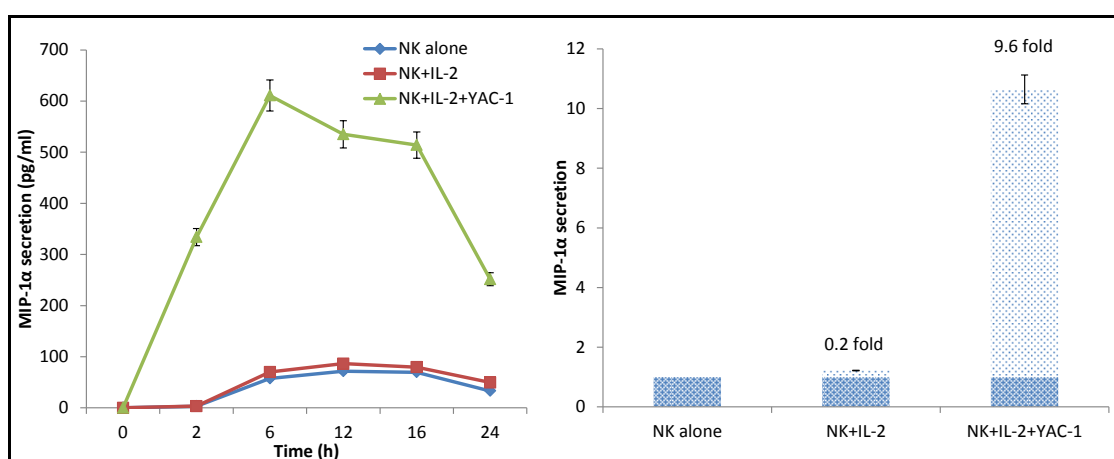


**Figure 4.4: Effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell activating receptors.** The upper panels describe the expression of NK cell activating receptor NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1) and lower panels describe the expression of Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on purified NK cells in absence (left panels) and presence of IL-2 (right panels).

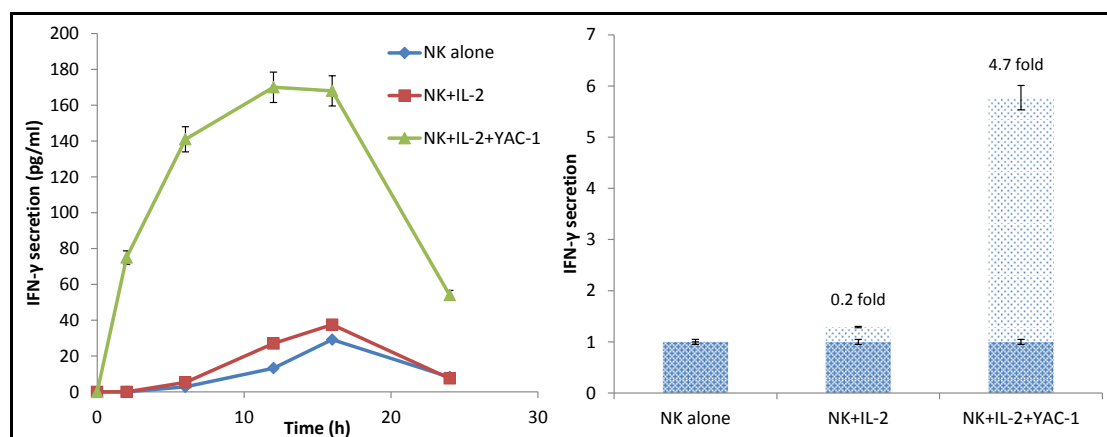


#### 4.5 Effect of IL-2 on NK mediated cytokine secretion

NK cells have the capacity to directly mount an immune response to aberrant cell by virtue of their ability to secrete cytokines and chemokines. IFN- $\gamma$  and MIP-1 $\alpha$  are among most prominent cytokines produced by NK cells against their targets. We further showed that although IL-2 stimulation resulted in significant increase in NK population and increase in expression of NK activation marker NK1.1 as shown in Figure 4.1 and 4.4, this did not result in hyperactivity of the NK cells. Figure 4.5 and 4.6 showed that there was no appreciable increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production by the NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation ( $p>0.05$ ). Incubation of NK cells with IL-2 resulted in only 0.2-fold increase in secretion of MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  (Figure 4.5 and 4.6) as compared with unstimulated NK cells. Thus, IL-2 alone caused proliferation of NK cells but did not result in hyperactivity of NK cells. However, these IL-2 expanded NK cells were not inactivated and in the presence of susceptible tumor cells (YAC-1) potentially mounted a very robust response in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production as represented in Figure 4.5 and 4.6. NK cells co-cultured with tumor cells in absence of IL-2 showed significantly lower activity.



**Figure 4.5: Kinetics and profile of MIP-1 $\alpha$  secretion on IL-2 stimulation.** NK cells were incubated alone or with IL-2 or with YAC-1 cells as positive control at 37 $^{\circ}$ C. Supernatants were harvested at different time points and as indicated MIP-1 $\alpha$  secretion was determined by using ELISA kit. Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.



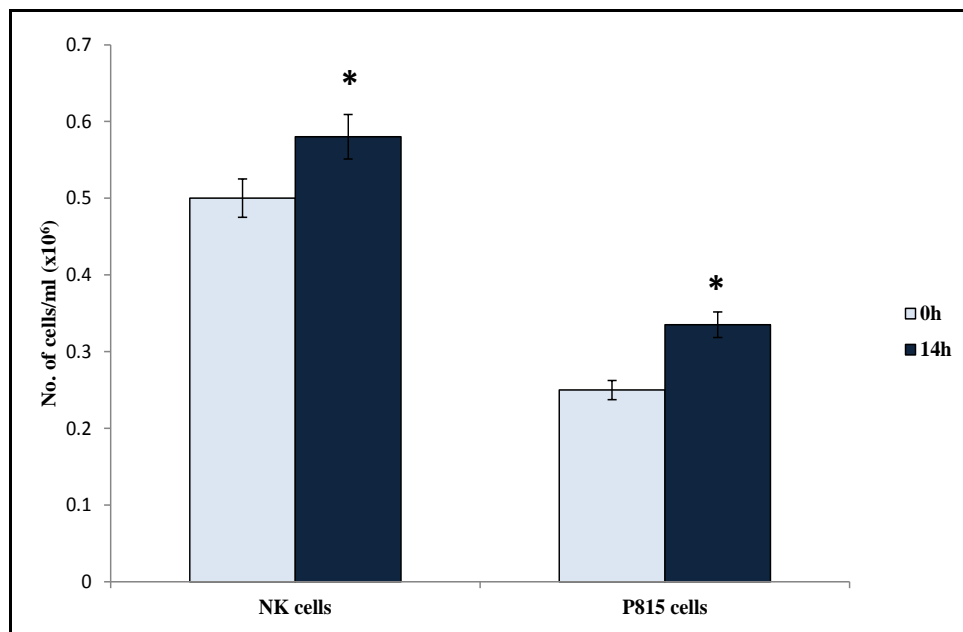
**Figure 4.6: Kinetics and profile of IFN- $\gamma$  secretion on IL-2 stimulation.** NK cells were incubated alone or with IL-2 or with YAC-1 cells as positive control at 37<sup>0</sup>C. Supernatants were harvested at different time points and as indicated IFN- $\gamma$  secretion was determined by using ELISA kit. Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.

Hence in the presence of tumor, we observed a specific increase in activity of NK cells. However, in absence of tumor the hypo-responsiveness of the IL-2 induced expansion of NK population was a measure of extensive proliferation of potentially active NK cells but refrained from hyperactivity. Such IL-2 proliferated cells were potentiated and hyperactive upon encountering target cells like tumor cells and can immediately cause significant increase in NK activity.

#### 4.6 Effect of culturing NK cells with NK resistant cell line P815 on NK cell receptor profile

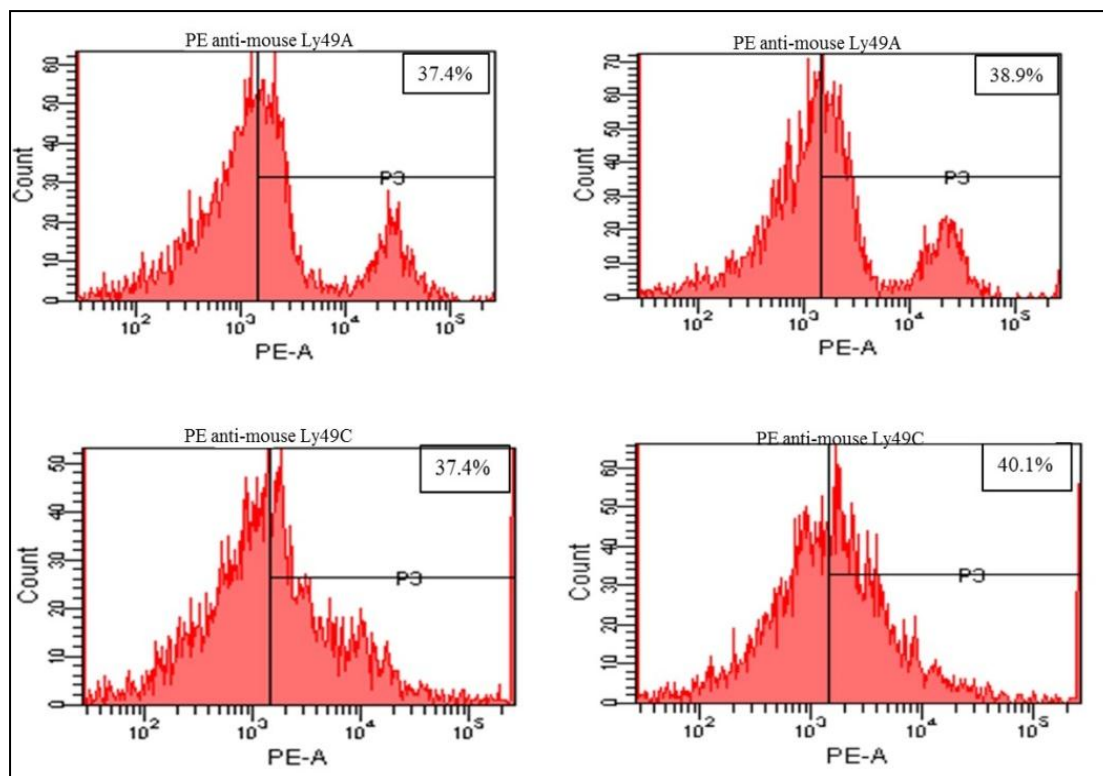
In order to investigate whether P815 cells could affect the expression of NK cells receptors relevant for tumor cell killing, NK cells were co-cultured overnight with P815 cells at 37<sup>0</sup>C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. Before, co-culturing of NK cells with P815 cells, generation of a growth curve and viability count was performed to evaluate the growth characteristics and assess the viability of P815 targets. The generation time observed was approx. 19 hours in DMEM with high glucose and 10% FBS. NK cells were then

cultured with P815 cells (2:1 ratio). Trypan blue exclusion assay was used to assess the viability of NK cells and P815 cells on overnight incubation of cells at 37°C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub> (Figure 4.7). There was also no difference in the peak pattern of Ly49D suggesting no significant change in Ly49D on a per cell basis too.



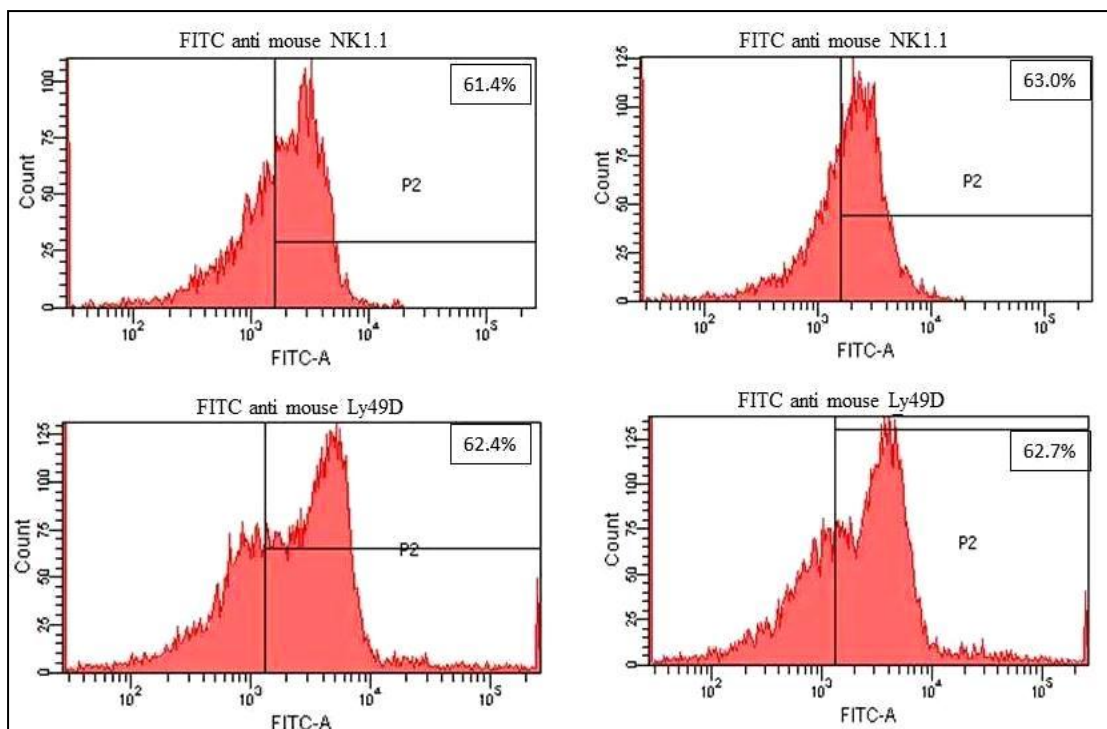
**Figure 4.7: Viable cell count upon co-culture of NK cells with tumor cells.** Viability of NK cells and P815 cells at 0h and 14h incubation on co-culture assayed by trypan blue exclusion method (\* $p < 0.05$ ). Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.

After 14h in culture, the viability of cells was more than 90%. The expression level of NK inhibitory receptors Ly49A and Ly49C as well as surface marker NK1.1 and activating receptor Ly49D were examined through flow cytometry (Figure 4.8 and 4.9). It was observed that co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells showed increase in expression of Ly49A and a significant increase in the inhibitory receptor Ly49C ( $p < 0.05$ ), which is cognate receptor for the MHC haplotype of the mouse model (C57BL/6).



**Figure 4.8: Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells (2:1) on inhibitory receptors expression profile.** The upper panel depict the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), while lower panel describe the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of P815 tumor cells (left panels) and NK cells with P815 cells (right panels).

NK cell proliferation and activation was determined by the expression of surface marker NK1.1. We found a significant increase in the expression of NK1.1 upon overnight incubation of NK cells with P815 cells ( $p < 0.05$ ). Ly49D is known to be associated with DAP-10 and DAP-12 that contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif and mediates activation of NK cells (as mentioned in section 2.3.1). Hence, the expression of activating receptor Ly49D was also studied on co-culturing NK cells with P815 cells. We found that there was no increase in expression of Ly49D (Figure 4.9). There was also no difference in the peak pattern of Ly49D suggesting no significant change in Ly49D on a per cell basis too.

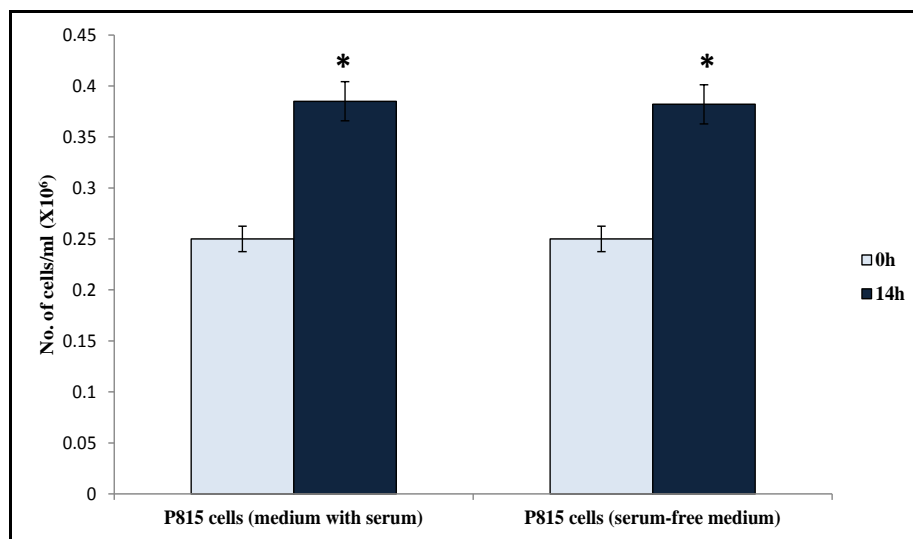


**Figure 4.9: Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells (2:1) on activating receptors expression profile.** The upper panel describe the expression of NK cell surface marker NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1) lower panel depict the expression of NK cell activating receptor Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of tumor (left panels) and NK cells with P815 cells (right panels).

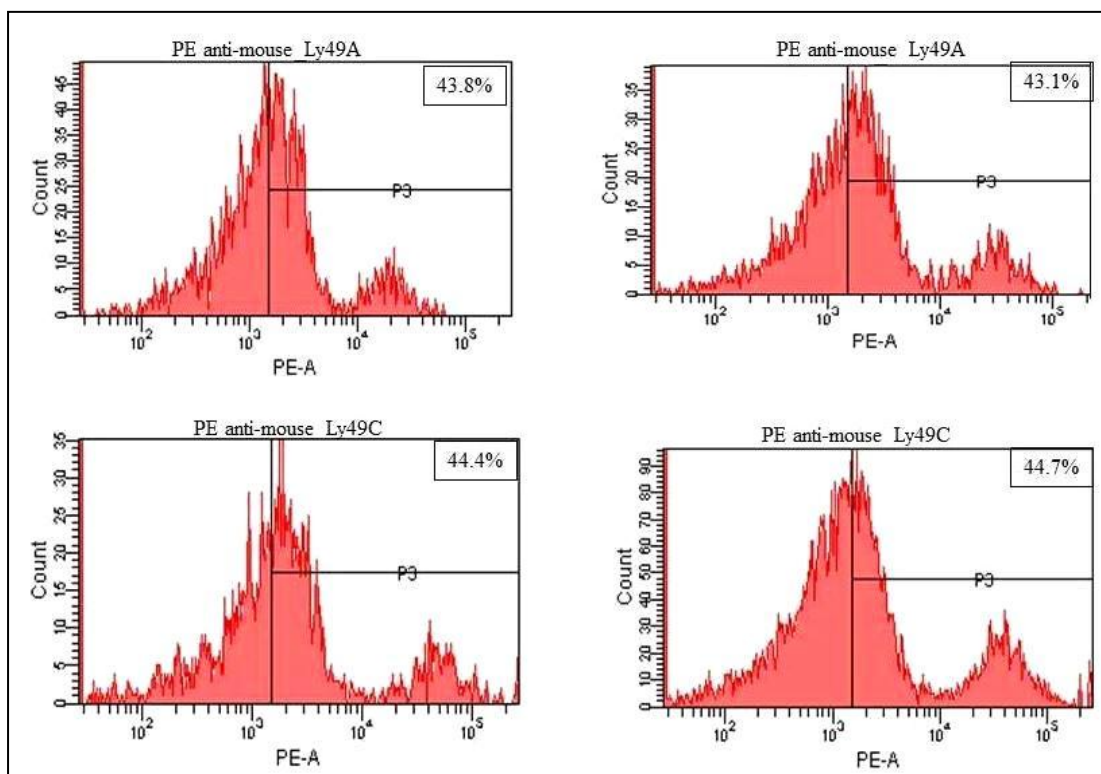
#### 4.7 Effect of culture of NK cells with P815 supernatant on NK receptor profile

The above findings concluded that NK-target interaction caused receptor modulation. To determine the factors responsible for the NK receptor modulation, NK cells were incubated with supernatant harvested from P815 cells. Prior to the experiment, P815 cells were adapted to grow in serum-free medium to eliminate the serum constituents that might interfered with P815-derived factors or may itself be involved in alteration of NK cell receptor profile. However it raised the question whether such serum starved cells are metabolically viable comparable to the tumor cells grown in the presence of serum. Viability of P815 cells adapted to serum-free medium was also checked and were observed to be more than 90% viable (Figure 4.10).

## Results

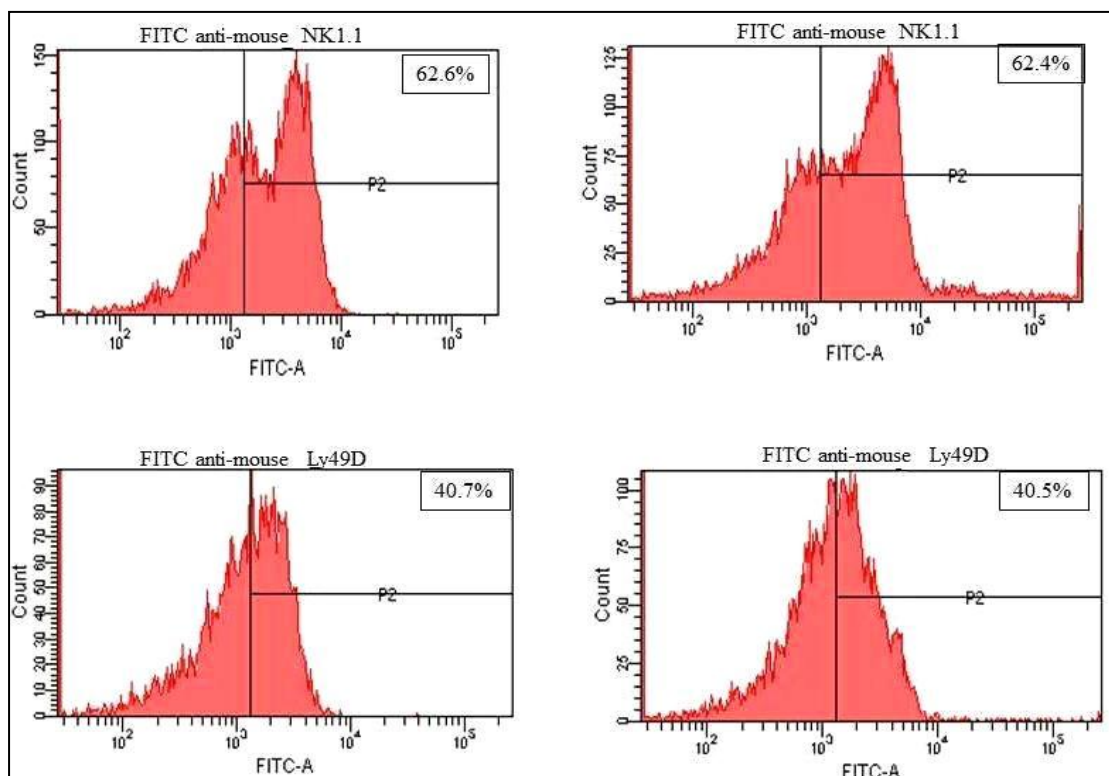


**Figure 4.10: Viable cell count upon adaptation of P815 cells in serum-free medium.** Viability of P815 cells at 0h and 14h incubation on culturing in medium with serum and serum-free medium assayed by trypan blue exclusion method (\* $p < 0.05$ ). Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of 3 independent experiments.



**Figure 4.11: Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cell supernatant on inhibitory receptors expression profile.** The upper panel depicts the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), while the lower panel describes the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells alone (left panels) and NK cells with P815 supernatant (right panels).

NK cells were incubated with P815 cell supernatant at 5% CO<sub>2</sub>, 37<sup>0</sup>C. The receptor profile of NK cells inhibitory receptors Ly49A and Ly49C as well as surface receptor NK1.1 and activating receptor Ly49D were analysed. There was no alteration in NK receptor expressions as compared to the IL-2 stimulated NK cells in the absence of tumor (p>0.05) (Figure 4.11 and 4.12). This suggested that the NK cell receptor alteration seen upon co-culture of P815 cells with NK cells was not due to soluble factors produced by NK resistant tumor, P815 cells.

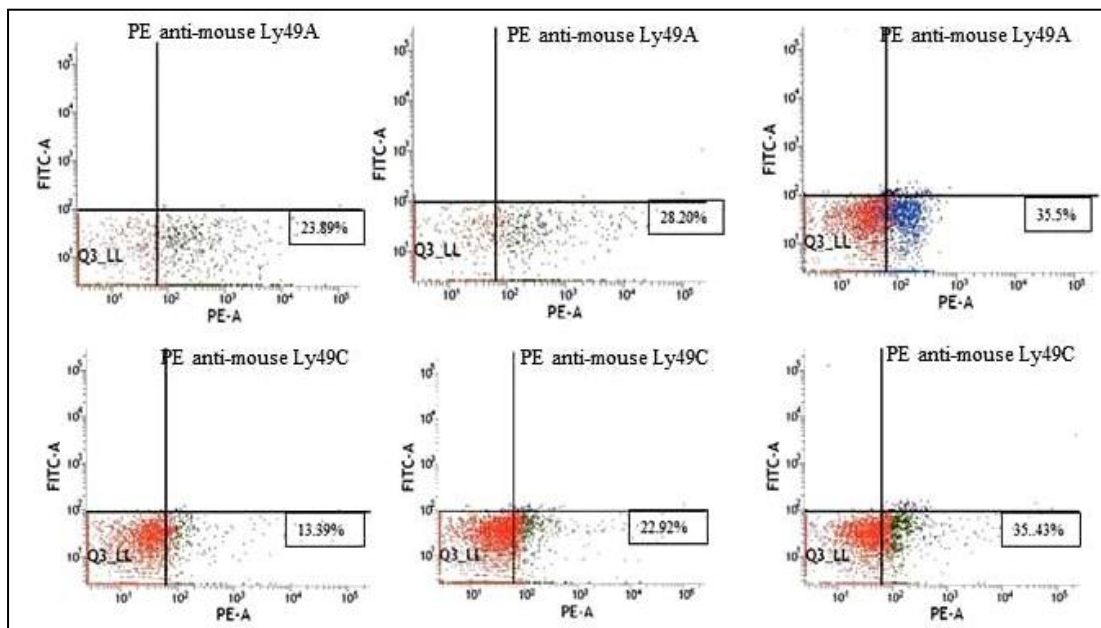


**Figure 4.12: Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cell supernatant on activating receptors expression profile.** The upper panel describe the expression of NK cell surface marker NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1). Lower panel depict the expression of NK cell activating receptor Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells without tumor supernatant (left panels) and NK cells with supernatant (right panels).



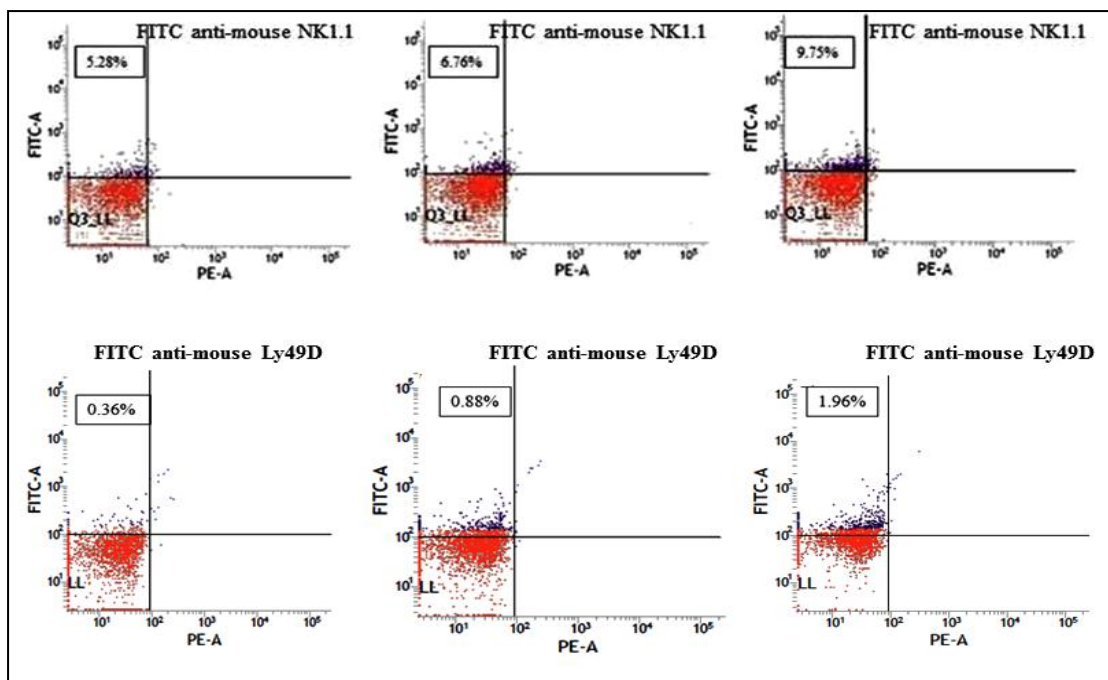
#### 4.8 Effect of co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells using transwell assay on NK cells receptor profile

Since there was significant alteration in inhibitory receptor profile upon co-culture of P815 cells with NK cells and there was no alteration in Ly49A and C expression on NK cell upon co-culture with P815 cell supernatant, it raised the possibility that direct contact between the target and effector cells was required for this modulation. In an attempt to investigate this mechanism, NK cells were cultured in serum-free medium in microtiter well plates with P815 cells (NK/P815 ratio: 4/1) and in the transwell separated by semi permeable membrane (NK cells in lower transwell and P815 cells in upper transwell). Upon overnight incubation, NK cells and P815 cells were harvested, counted, and analysed for the expression of activating receptors NK1.1, Ly49D and inhibitory receptors Ly49A and C (Figure 4.13 and 4.14).



**Figure 4.13: Effect of NK cells inhibitory receptors on co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells in transwells.** The upper panel describe the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), while lower panel describe the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of tumor (left panels), NK cells with P815 cells in trans-wells (middle panels) and NK cells with P815 cells in same wells (right panels).





**Figure 4.14: Effect of NK cells activating receptors on co-culture of NK cells with P815 cells in transwells.** The upper panel describe the expression of NK cell receptor NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1), while lower panel describe the expression of NK cell activating receptor Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence tumor (left panels), NK cells with P815 cells in trans-wells (middle panels) and NK cells with P815 cells in same wells (right panels).

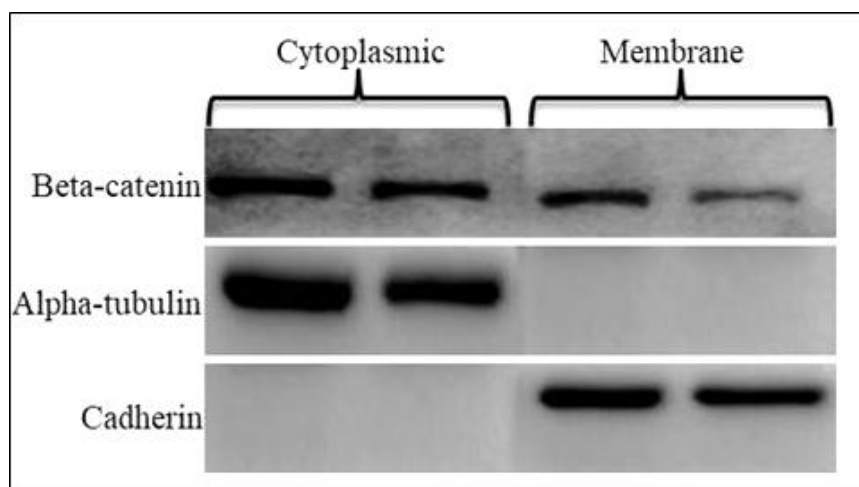
Population of both cells increased on 14h incubation and more than 90% cells were viable as seen by trypan blue exclusion assay. There was a significant increase in the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptors on co-cultured cells in same well compared to cells grown in transwell plates, where direct contact between target and effector cell was prevented by the presence of the semipermeable membrane. However the semipermeable membrane did allow supernatant factors to pass through.

From these findings, it may be concluded that direct cell to cell interaction between target and effector was required for alteration in NK cell receptor profile. Moreover, the target cells harvested from the upper well in transwell plate were also analysed for the expression of NK cells receptors (data not shown). But the target cells did not express any of these NK specific receptors being studied. Thus, conclusively showed that there was no

penetration of NK cells through the semipermeable membrane and no cross contamination was ruled out. Thus, NK receptor modulation strategy employed by tumor cell expressed ligands was indeed mediated by NK-target surface interaction.

### 4.9 Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptides on NK cells receptor profile

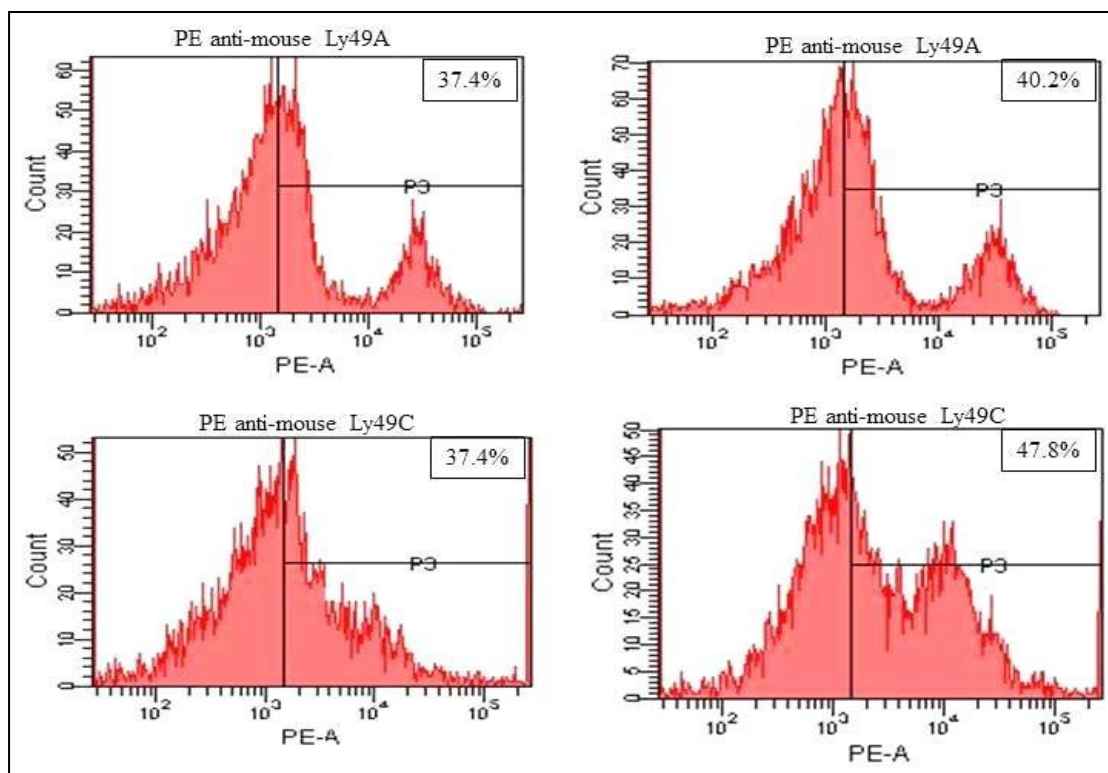
In the above findings, we observed that neither supernatant harvested from P815 cells nor transwell culture of NK cells and target cells caused any modulation in NK cell receptor profile. Therefore tumor derived soluble factors were not responsible for alteration of NK receptor profile. We therefore isolated cell membrane of P815 cells to investigate whether tumor derived membrane components were capable of modulation of NK cell receptor profile.



**Figure 4.15: Western blot of P815 cells membrane derived protein.** The P815 membrane derived components expressed beta-catenin which is expressed by all cytoplasmic and membrane bound proteins and also cadherin which is specific marker for membrane bound proteins. The P815 membrane derived components did not express alpha-tubulin (internal control, expressed by cytoplasmic proteins).

The tumor membrane isolated from P815 cells were analysed for purity by western blot (Figure 4.15). The P815 membrane derived components expressed beta-

catenin which is expressed by all cytoplasmic and membrane bound proteins and also cadherin which is a specific marker for membrane bound proteins. The P815 membrane derived components did not express alpha-tubulin which is expressed by cytoplasmic proteins. Thus, P815 membrane fraction was conclusively identified as membrane derived fraction, not contaminated with soluble factors derived from the tumor. P815 membrane peptide was co-cultured with IL-2 stimulated NK cells. These were then analysed for alteration in expression of activating NK cell receptors NK1.1 and Ly49D as well as inhibitory receptors Ly49 A and Ly49C. It was observed that there was slight increase in expression of Ly49A but a very significant increase in expression of inhibitory receptor Ly49C ( $p < 0.05$ ) (Figure 4.16).



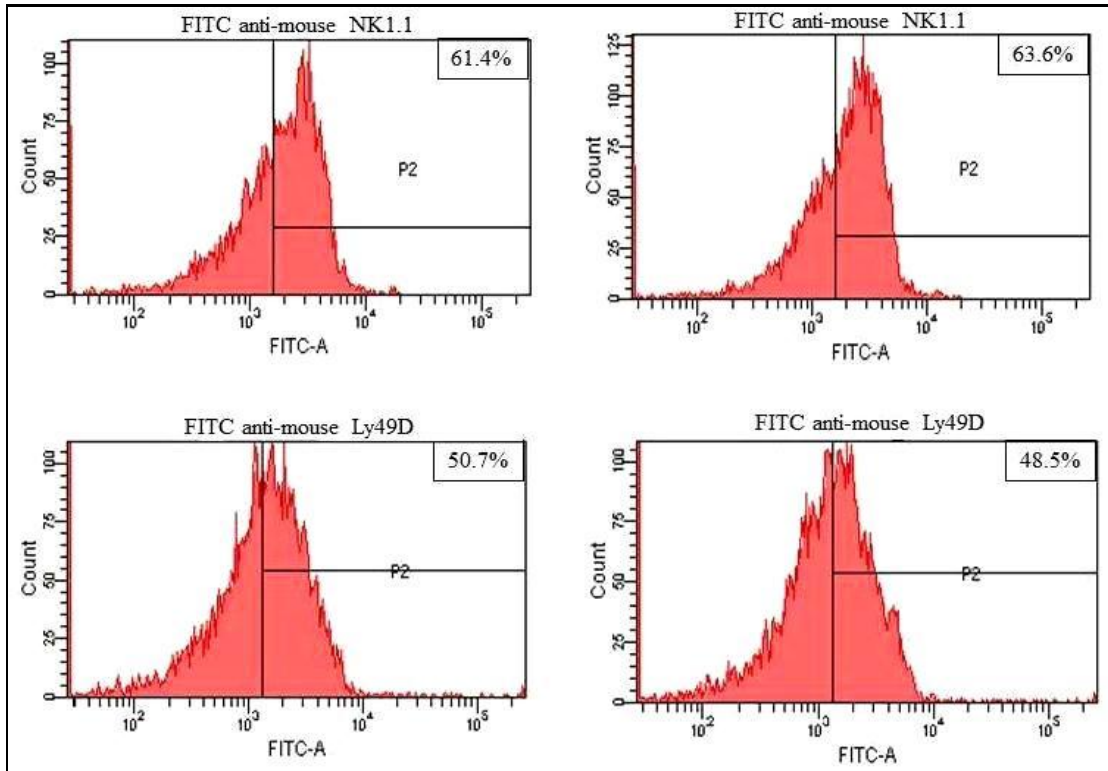
**Figure 4.16: Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide on inhibitory receptors expression profile.** The upper panel depict the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), while lower panel describe the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of tumor (left panels) and NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide (right panels).

We observed in our studies that IL-2 alone caused a more significant stimulation of Ly49A expression as compared to Ly49C (Sharma and Das, 2018). However in the presence of P815 membrane, the induced boosting of inhibitory receptor expression was greater in Ly49C. In C57BL/6 mice which has H2b background, Ly49C is the cognate inhibitory receptor and upon co-culture of P815 derived membrane fractions with NK cells, there was a more significant change in the cognate inhibitory receptor expression as compared to the non-cognate inhibitory receptor. P815 has high expression of MHC I and significant boosting of Ly49C expression by P815 membrane components indicate greater engagement of cognate inhibitory receptor by P815 expressed ligands thus resulted in tumor mediated specific boost in inhibition of NK mediated cytotoxicity.

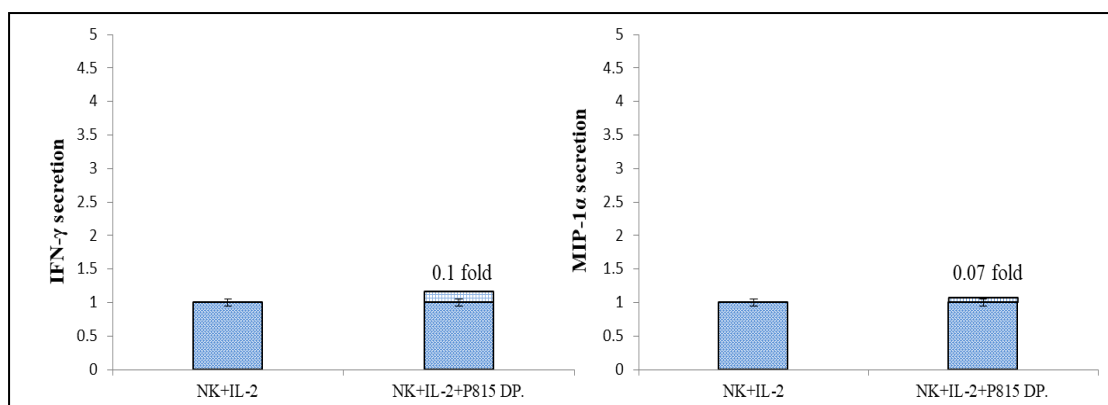
We observed no significant change in expression of activating receptor Ly49D ( $p > 0.05$ ) but there was a significant change in expression of surface marker NK1.1 ( $p < 0.05$ ) (Figure 4.17). This implies that in response to IL-2 stimulation, NK cells proliferated but in the presence of P815 membrane fraction, there was no significant alteration of activating receptor, Ly49D expression. Thus tumor derived factors were unable to significantly modulate NK activating receptors. Hence P815 membrane resulted in increase in expression of inhibitory receptors for MHC I, thus increasing the overall inhibition signal by the NK cells, helping the tumor cells to evade NK mediated cytotoxicity.

NK cells have been reported to secrete various cytokines and chemokines, most prominently IFN- $\gamma$  and MIP-1 $\alpha$  upon target cell interaction, which is indicative of NK cell activation potential. So, we determined the secretion profile of IL-2 stimulated NK cells upon co-culture with target P815 derived membrane peptides. We observed no significant increase in IFN- $\gamma$  (0.1 fold) and MIP-1 $\alpha$  (0.07 fold) secretion respectively compared to IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of tumor (Figure 4.18). Thus, the

alteration of NK receptor profile resulted in significant increase in inhibitory receptors expression of inhibition of decrease in NK activity.



**Figure 4.17: Effect of culturing NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide on activating receptors expression profile.** The upper panel describe the expression of NK cell surface marker NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1) and lower panel describe the expression of NK cell activating receptor Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on IL-2 stimulated NK cells in absence of tumor (left panels) and NK cells with P815 membrane derived peptide (right panels).



**Figure 4.18: Secretion profile of IFN-γ and MIP-1α.** Secretion profile of IFN-γ and MIP-1α (pg/ml) on interaction with P815 cells derived protein (P815 DP.) Values represent mean ± SD of 3 independent experiments.

#### 4.10 Analysis of interaction of NK inhibitory receptors with classical HLA molecule

Inhibitory Killer Immunoglobulin Receptors (KIR) belongs to Ig superfamily and contain ITIM sequences in their cytoplasmic domain which initiate an inhibition signal upon engagement of these receptors by corresponding ligand. KIRs specifically bind to classical HLA class-I molecules and transduce inhibition or activation signal depending upon ITIM or ITAM driven signalling processes. Among KIRs, mainly KIR2DL1 and KIR2DL2 expressions have been reported to be associated with cancer progression and inhibitory KIR-ligand combination frequency had been correlated with tumor recurrence (Benson and Caligiuri, 2014, Beksac et al., 2015). Therefore, the present study was focussed on interaction studies of KIR2DL1 and KIR2DL2 with their cognate ligands (Table 4.2).

**Table 4.2: Cognate ligands for different NK cell inhibitory receptors**

Receptors	Ligands
KIR2DL1	HLA-Cw2, HLA-Cw4, HLA-Cw5
KIR2DL2	HLA-Cw1, HLA-Cw3, HLA-Cw7
NKG2A/CD94	HLA-G, HLA-E

The 3D structures of KIR2DL1, HLA-Cw1, HLA-Cw2, HLA-Cw5 and HLA-Cw7 were not available, so the structures were predicted using I-TASSER, which predicted five models for each receptor/ligand molecule. Among these models, the models with high C-score, TM-score were subjected to refine for energy minimization, stabilization and flexibility of structures (Table 4.3). It was observed that the RMSD scores obtained

from 3Drefine server were lowest among RMSD scores obtained from other structures refining servers (Table 4.4).

**Table 4.3: Lowest scores of modelled 3D structures obtained from I-TASSER**

	HLA-Cw1	HLA-Cw2	HLA-Cw5	HLA-Cw7	KIR2DL1
C-score	0.22	-1.15	0.30	-1.45	-2.19
TM-score	0.74±0.11	0.57±0.15	0.75±0.10	0.54±0.15	0.46±0.15
RMSD	4.9±3.2Å	9.2±4.6Å	5.5±3.5Å	10.0±4.6Å	11.6±4.5Å

**Table 4.4: RMSD scores (Å) after refinement of structures with different refinement server**

	HLA-Cw1	HLA-Cw2	HLA-Cw5	HLA-Cw7	KIR2DL1
ProTsav score	0.540	0.513	0.477	0.587	0.560
#3Drefine Score	0.173	0.209	0.171	0.209	0.225
Galaxyrefine Score	0.380	0.509	0.402	0.450	0.540

#RMSD scores (in red) obtained from 3Drefine server were lowest among all 3 structures refining server

The structures with lowest RMSD scores that correspond to the more stable structure were selected for molecular docking. The receptor-ligand complexes were then docked using ClusPro and H-bond interactions, non-bonded contacts and area involved in interactions were obtained through PDBsum server (summarized in Table 4.5). The interface amino acids residues involved in the interactions at the receptor- ligand interface have been shown in Figure 4.19a to 4.19d. It was observed that more number of chains were involved in interaction of KIR2DL1 with HLA-Cw4 (5 chains) and KIR2DL2 with HLA-Cw3 (4 chains) as compared to interactions of KIRs with their other cognate ligands (2 chains). The presence of multiple amino acid chains in KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4

## Results

and KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw3 complexes signified that more number of amino acid residues was involved in these interactions as compared to other ligand interactions with these receptors. Moreover, multiple hydrogen bonds were involved in interactions of different chains in KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4 (2-14 hydrogen bonds) and KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw3 (1-13 hydrogen bonds) complexes respectively. On the other hand, the number of hydrogen bonds was comparatively lesser 10, 9, 9 and 8 in KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw1, KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw5, KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw1 and KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw7 complexes. Also, KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4 complex observed to have lowest energy (-1235.3 Kcal/mol) compared to other KIRs-cognate ligand complexes (Table 4.5).

**Table 4.5: Molecular interactions between NK inhibitory receptors with classical HLA molecules**

Receptor ligand complex	Energy (Kcal/mol)	No. of interface residues chain:chain	Interface area (Å <sup>2</sup> )	No. of salt bridges	No. of sulphide bonds	No. of hydrogen bonds	No. of non-bonded contacts
KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw2	-1042.5	29:28 A:B	1630:1768	1	-	10	175
KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4	-1235.3	32:23 A:B	1234:1384	2	-	14	166
		30:23 E:F	1230:1360	3	-	14	165
		12:15 A:D	699:652	4	-	8	77
		3:3 A:E	183:193	-	-	2	8
		4:3 B:E	151:156	1	-		14
KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw5	-1094.0	25:27 A:B	1409:1334	2	-	9	149
KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw1	-799.9	14:16 A:B	903:932	3	-	9	82
KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw3	-877.7	31:21 A:B	1220:1330	5	-	13	168
		12:14 A:D	752:666	5	-	8	85
		5:7 D:E	380:322	-	-	1	32
KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw7	-972.6	19:25 A:B	1159:1082	-	-	8	141



Furthermore, NK receptor-ligand complexes were evaluated for its stereochemical properties depicting the number of residues lying in favoured, allowed, and outlier regions of the receptor-ligand complex (Figure 4.20) and are summarized in Table 4.6. It was observed that 67.5%, 73.3%, 70.9%, 67.8%, 67.4% and 68.3% residues lied in favoured regions and 28.7%, 23.5%, 26%, 29.5% and 29.9% residues were present in allowed regions of KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw2, KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4, KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw5, KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw1, KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw3 and KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw7 complexes respectively. Therefore, among KIRs-classical HLA complexes, KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4 complex was found to be most stable structure in terms of energy minimization, presence of number of hydrogen bonds, non-bonded contacts and its stereochemical properties.

**Table 4.6: Ramachandran plot scores of NK receptors interactions with classical HLA molecules**

	KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw2	KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw4	KIR2DL1-HLA-Cw5	KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw1	KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw3	KIR2DL2-HLA-Cw7
Residues in favoured region (%)	67.5	73.3	70.9	67.8	67.4	68.3
Residues in allowed region (%)	28.7	23.5	26	29.5	29.7	29.9
Residues in outlier region (%)	3.8	3.2	3.1	2.6	2.9	1.9

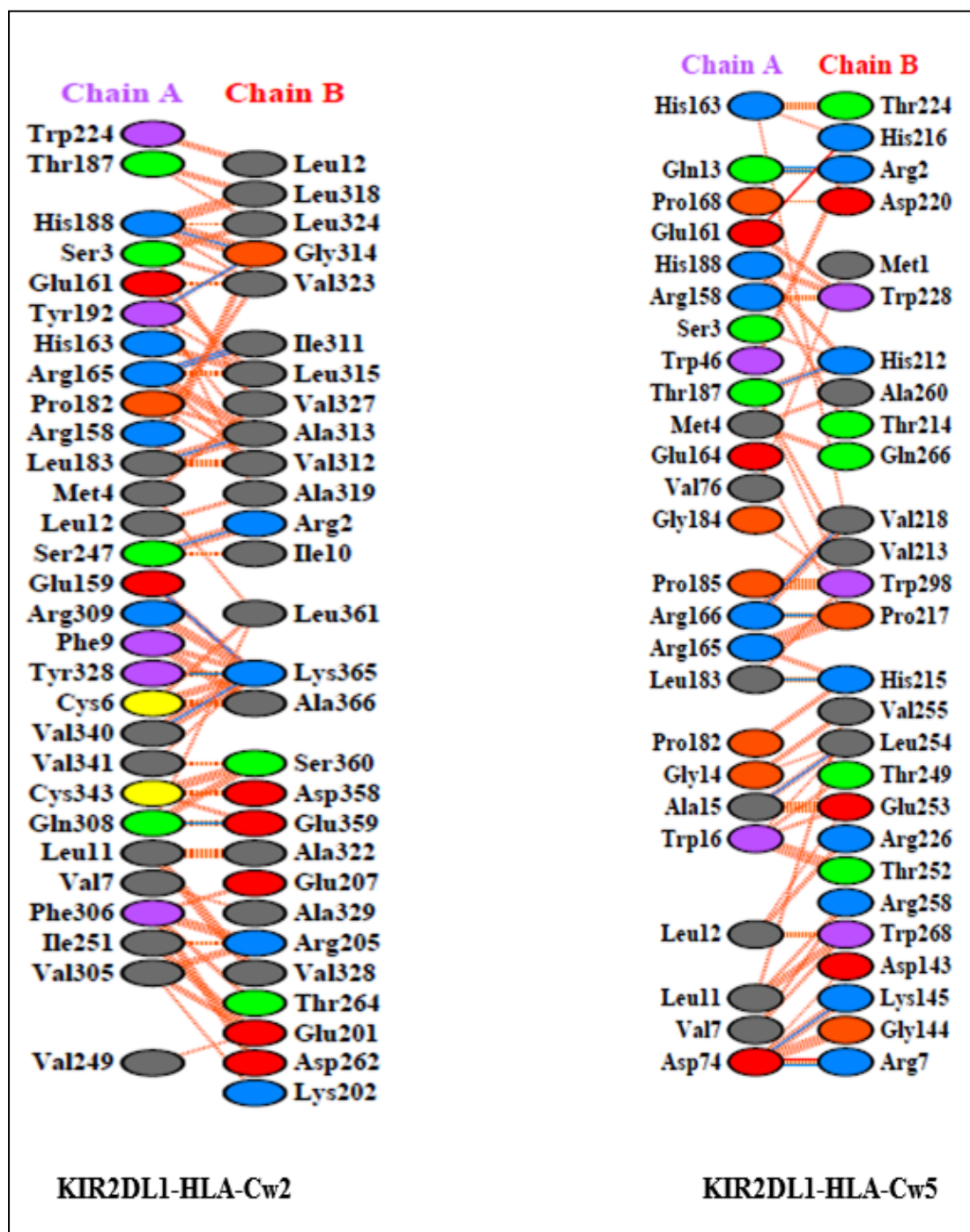
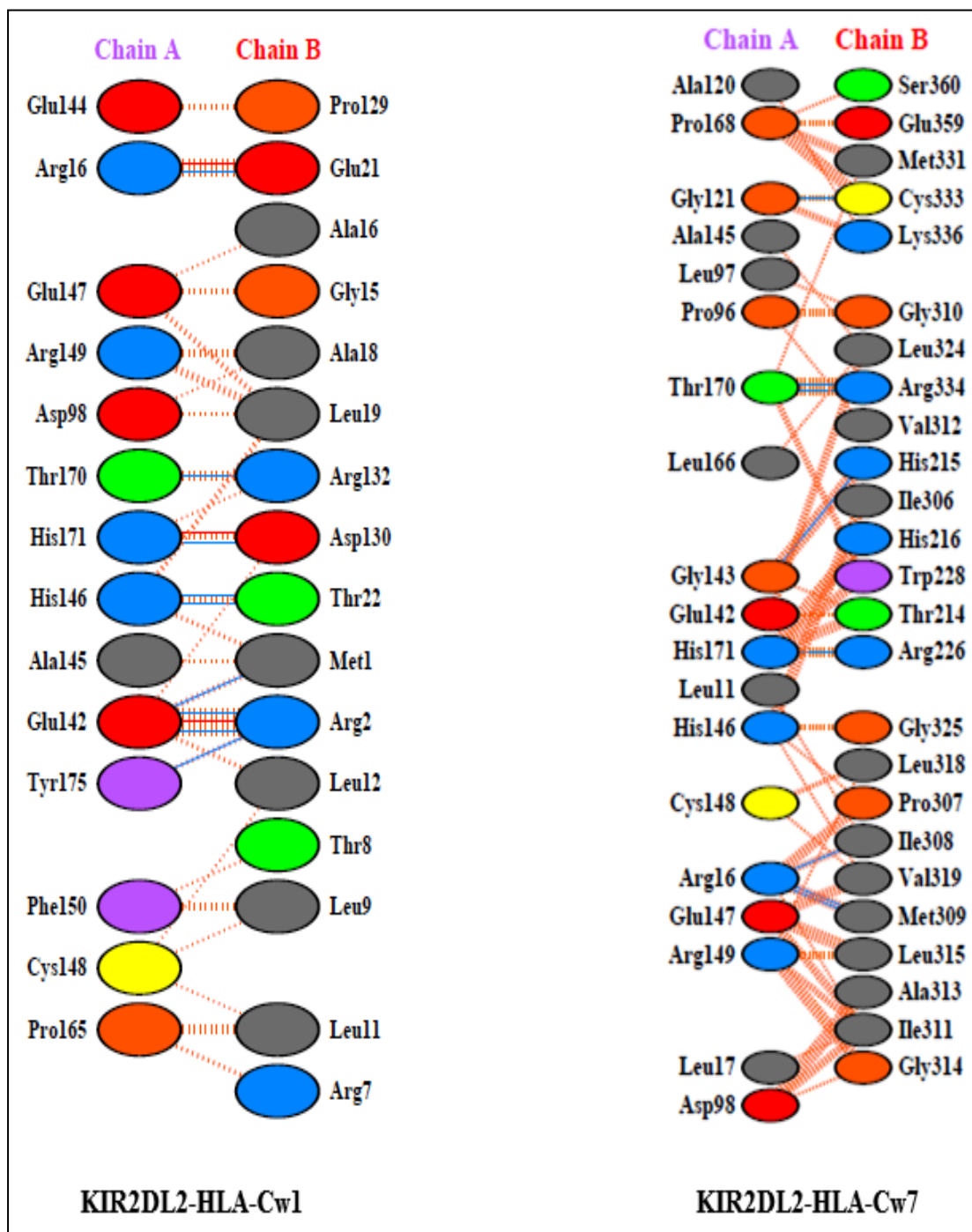


Figure 4.19a: Residues involved in interactions between NK inhibitory receptor and classical HLA molecule. Amino acid residues involved in interactions in KIR2DL1- HLA-Cw2 (left) and KIR2DL1- HLA-Cw5 complex (right).



**Figure 4.19b: Residues involved in interactions between NK inhibitory receptor and classical HLA molecule.** Amino acid residues involved in interaction of KIR2DL2- HLA-Cw1 (left) and KIR2DL2- HLA-Cw7 complexes (right).

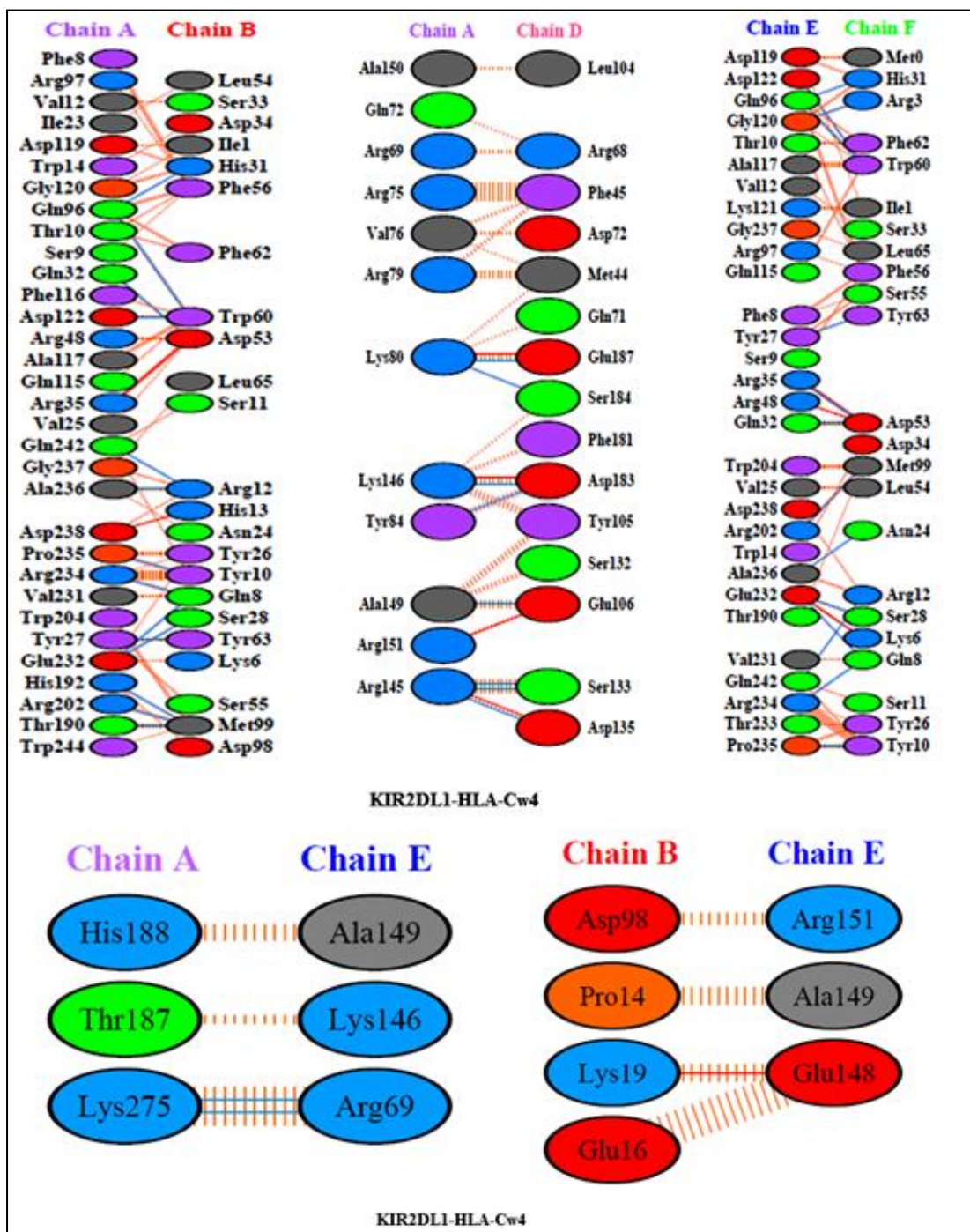
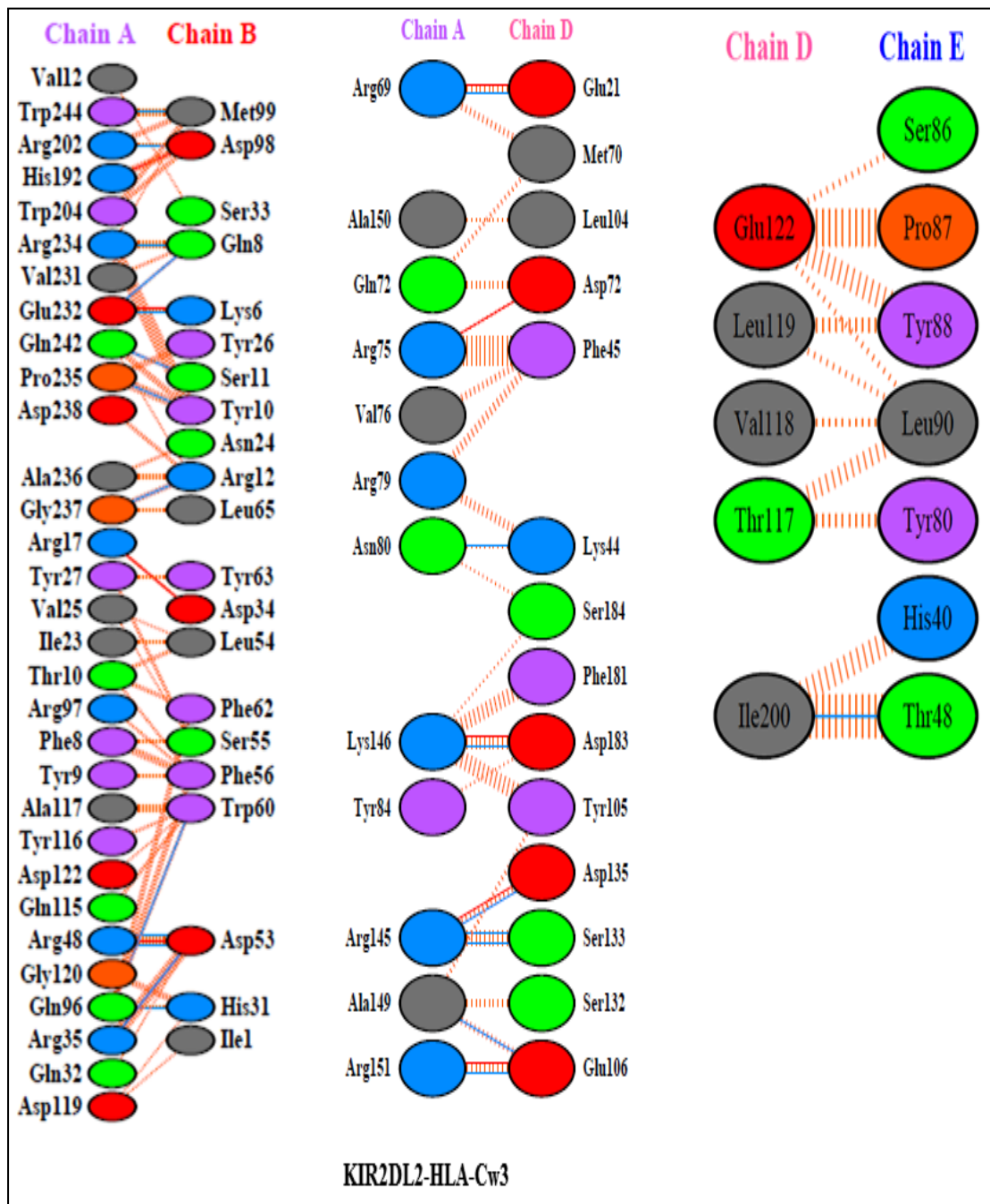
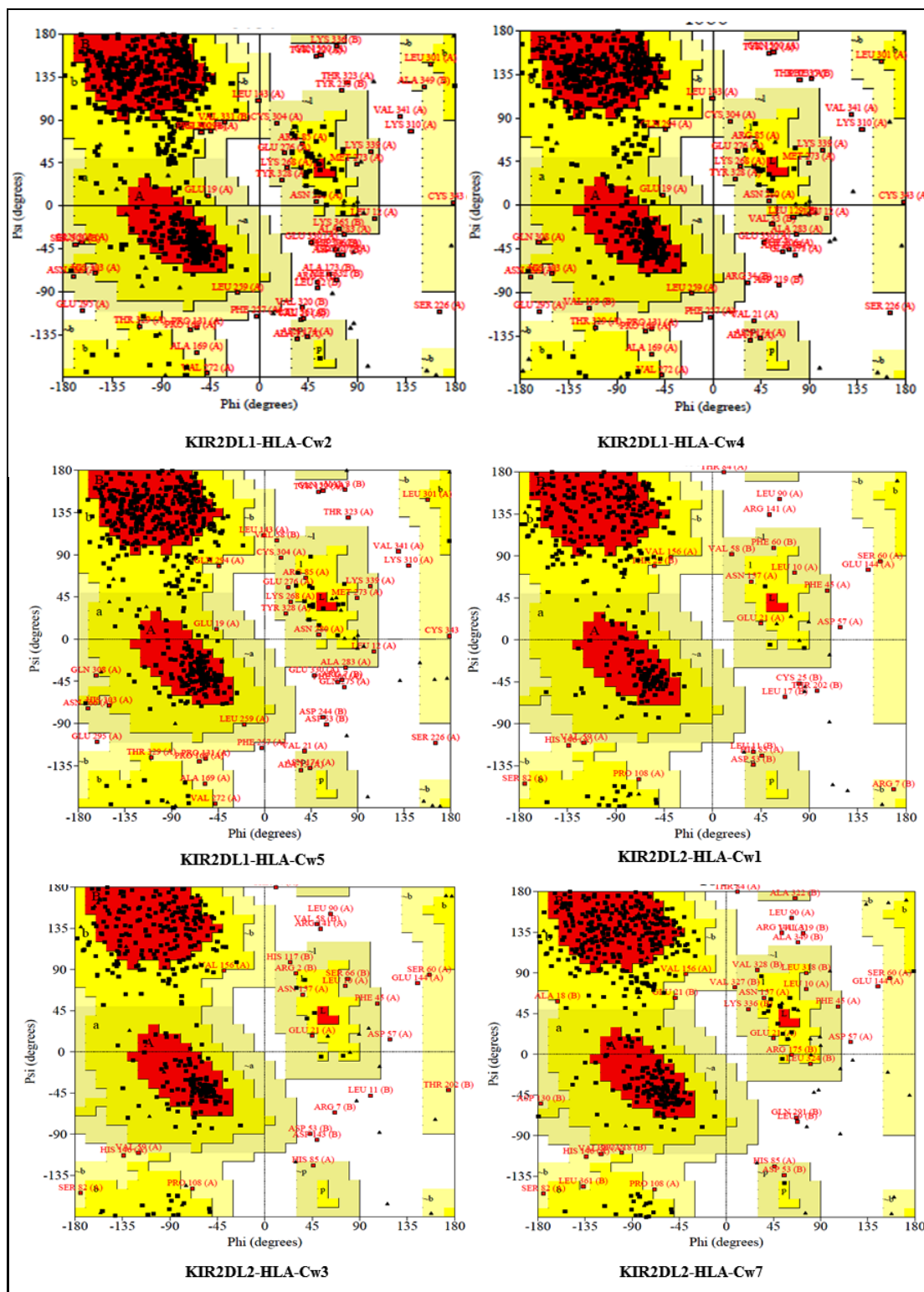


Figure 4.19c: Residues involved in interactions between NK inhibitory receptor and classical HLA molecule. Amino acid residues participated at KIR2DL2- HLA-Cw4 interface.





**Figure 4.19d: Residues involved in interactions between NK receptor and classical HLA molecule.** Amino acid residues participated at KIR2DL2- HLA-Cw3 interface.



**Figure 4.20: Ramachandran plot of NK receptors interactions with classical HLA molecules.** Ramachandran Plot were generated from human NK cell inhibitory receptors KIRs and their cognate ligands, classical HLA molecule interaction that represented both  $\alpha$ -helix and  $\beta$ -sheet. The red, brown and yellow regions represent the favored, allowed and generously allowed regions as defined by Procheck (PDBsum server).

#### **4.11 Analysis of interaction of NK inhibitory receptors with non-classical HLA molecule**

NKG2A/CD94 receptor complex belong to C-type lectin family of receptors and binds to the non- classical HLA molecule (HLA-G/ HLA-E) expressed on the surface of the targets or healthy cell. The docking studies between NKG2A/CD94 and HLA-G as well NKG2A/CD94 and HLA-E complexes were analysed using ClusPro. The binding studies such as hydrogen bond interactions, non-bonded contacts and area involved in interactions were obtained through PDBsum server (summarized in Table 4.7). It was observed that 1-15 hydrogen bonds were present between different chains of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E complex and 11 hydrogen bonds between chain A and B; Chain C and D each were present in NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G complex. The number of salt-bridges were more in NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E (4,3,2,2,2,1,2,2,1 and 1 in A:B, A:D, A:J, C:E, A:K, B:C, C:F, E:F and J:K respectively) as compared to NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G (2 in A:B and C:D each) complex. Also, the more number of amino acids chains were present in NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E (7 Chains) as compared with NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G (4 chains). The amino acids residues involved in the interactions at the receptor- ligand interface are shown in Figure 4.21a and 4.21b. The stereo-chemical properties of the complexes were then analysed by generating the Ramachandran plots (Figure 4.22). It showed 77.9% residues in most favoured region, 21.3% in allowed region and 0.8% in outlier region of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E complex. It was observed that 85.6% residues lying in most favoured region, 14.4% in allowed region and no residues in outlier region of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G (Table 4.8).

## 4.12 Comparative analysis of KIRs with classical HLA and NKG2A/CD94 with non-classical HLA

It was observed that the receptor interactions with classical HLA as well as non-classical HLA complexes were found to have stable conformation with a low energy score. However, numbers of residues involved in receptor ligand interactions, hydrogen bonds (H-bonds), number of salt bridges in contact, number of non-bonded contacts were significantly more in receptor interaction with non-classical HLA complex (NKG2A-HLA-E). Also, we observed sulphide bonds (2) interaction in case of NK receptor with non-classical HLA molecules (Table 4.7) whereas no such interactions were seen in case of KIR-classical HLA complex.

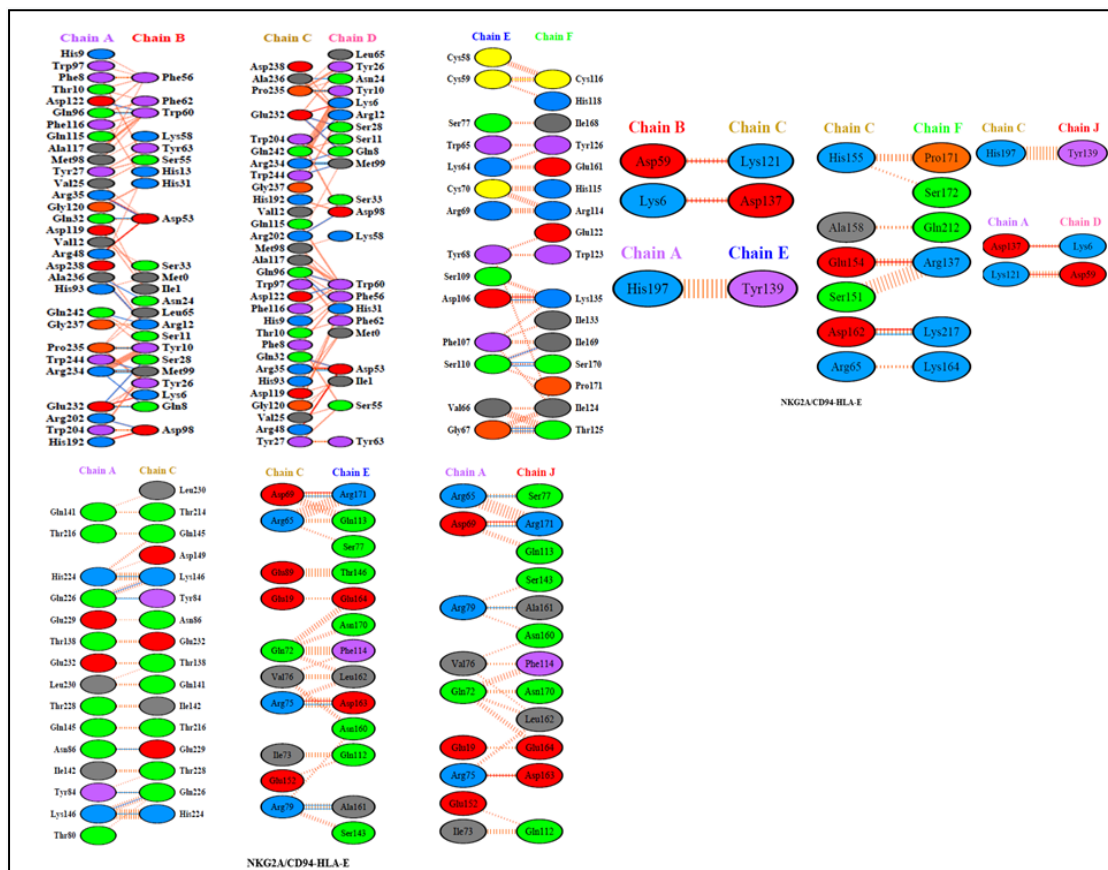
**Table 4.7: Molecular interactions between NK inhibitory receptors with non-classical HLA molecules**

Receptor ligand complex	Energy Kcal/mol	No. of interface residues chain:chain	Interface area (Å <sup>2</sup> )	No. of salt bridges	No. of sulphide bonds	No. of hydrogen bonds	No. of non-bonded contacts
NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E	-896.9	30:23 A:B	1237:1366	4	-	15	185
		30:22 C: D	1245:1347	3	-	15	182
		15:16 A:C	890:893	-	-	7	82
		2:2 A: D	77:86	2	-		3
		1:1 A:E	63:79	-	-		5
		1:1 C:J	38:51	-	-		5
		9:12 A:J	586:580	2	-	3	44
		10:13 C:E	588:541	2	-	4	53
		6:10 A:K	422:374	1	-		29
		2:2 B:C	85:75	2	-		2
		5:5 B: D	239:241	-	-	5	34
		6:6 C:F	315:295	2	-	1	19
		14:16 E:F	704:714	1	1	6	55
15:12 J:K	683:694	1	1	4	43		
NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G	-718.4	18 :19 A:B	766:746	2	1	11	97
		18:18 C: D	757:741	2	1	11	89
		2: 2 B: D	168:168	-	-	-	4



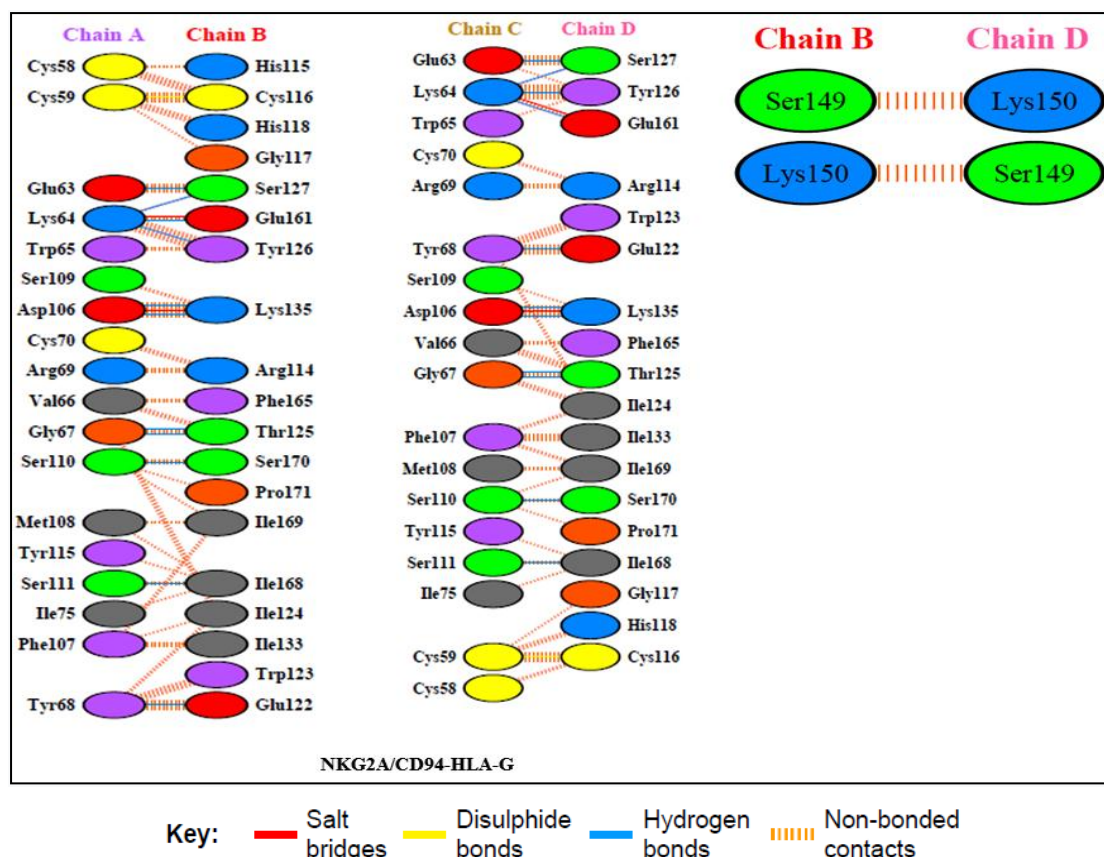
**Table 4.8: Ramachandran plot scores of NK receptors interactions with non-classical HLA molecules**

	NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E	NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G
Residues in favoured region (%)	77.9	85.6
Residues in allowed region (%)	21.3	14.4
Residues in outlier region (%)	0.8	0.0

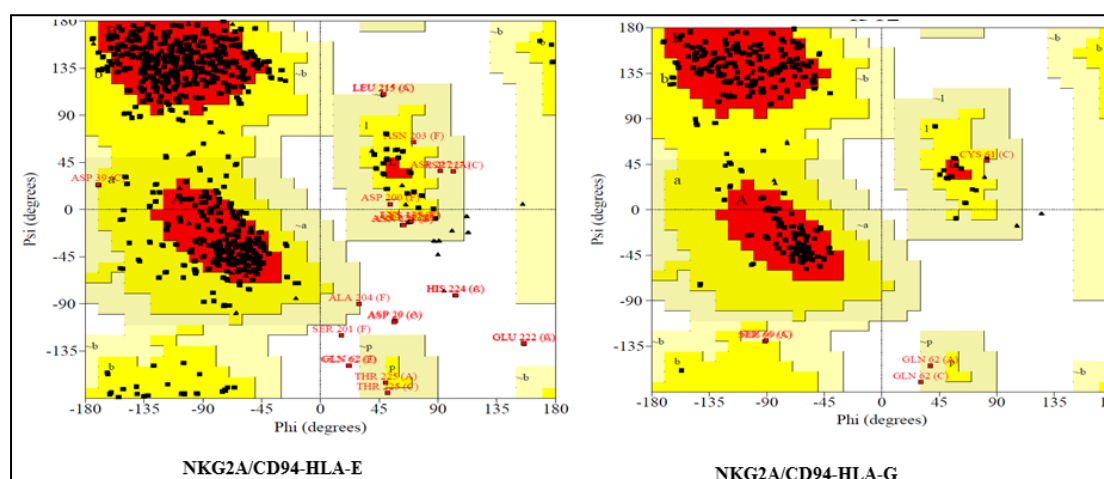


Key: — Salt bridges — Disulphide bonds — Hydrogen bonds ||||| Non-bonded contacts

**Figure 4.21a: Residues involved in interactions between NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA molecule.** Amino acid residues involved in interaction of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E interaction.



**Figure 4.21b: Residues involved in interactions between NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA molecule.** Amino acid residues involved in interaction of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G interaction.



**Figure 4.22: Ramachandran plot of NK receptors interactions with non-classical HLA molecules.** Ramachandran Plot were generated from human NK cell inhibitory receptors NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E (left) and NKG2A/CD94-HLA-G (right) interaction that represents both  $\alpha$ -helix and  $\beta$ -sheet. The red, brown and yellow regions represent the favored, allowed and generously allowed regions as defined by Procheck (PDBsum server). Almost all residues were positioned under favoured and allowed regions.

A significantly higher number of H-bonds contributing to stability of interaction were observed in case of inhibitory receptor interaction with non-classical MHC. It was observed that more number of chains were involved in NKG2A/CD94 receptor-ligand interactions, thus a stronger binding affinity of NKG2A/CD94 NK receptor with non-classical HLA molecule was predicted (Table 4.5 and 4.7). The stereochemical properties showed that 77.9% and 85.6% residues were present in most favoured region; 21.3% and 14.4% residues lied in allowed region; 0.8% and 0.0% in outlier region of NKG2A/CD94-HLA-E and NKG2A/CD94-HLA-Gcomplex respectively. On the other hand, 67-73% of residues lied in favoured regions and 23-30% amino acid residues were present in allowed region and 1.9-3.8% residues were positioned in outlier region of KIRs-classical HLA complexes (Figure 4.20 and 4.22). This showed more stability and stronger affinity of NK receptor and non-classical HLA molecules as compared with NK receptor and classical HLA molecules.

Both classical and non-classical HLA interaction with KIRs or NKG2A/CD94 receptors trigger similar downstream signalling pathways hence structural interaction of KIRs with classical HLA and NKG2A/CD94 with non-classical HLA were evaluated to explore difference in inhibition potential of both receptors. Upon comparing the affinities of NK cell receptor, KIRs with classical HLA and NKG2A/CD94 with non-classical HLA ligands, we found that there was a higher diversity of bonding in case of non-classical HLA binding to inhibitory receptors. Also, number of interface residues involved in interactions and presence of different chains were numerous in case of non-classical HLA molecules. A significantly higher number of H-bonds were observed in case of non-classical HLA interaction with inhibitory receptors. These binding pattern of NK receptors with their cognate ligand may be responsible for stronger affinity of NK receptors towards non-classical HLA molecules.



*Chapter 5*  
*Discussion*

---

## CHAPTER 5

### DISCUSSION

---

IL-2 is a key cytokine that is well known for its role in immune cell proliferation and activation in tumor microenvironment. NK cells have IL-2R $\beta\gamma$  and had shown to be responsive to IL-2 with intermediate affinity (as discussed in section 2.10). In tumor milieu, there is localized increase in IL-2 concentration by antigen stimulated T cells. Tumor microenvironment consists of variety of cells such as T-cells, NK cells, dendritic cells, myeloid cells (as discussed in section 2.6.1.1). Like T-cells, NK cells expand in high IL-2 milieu and play significant role in immunosurveillance. Therefore, we wanted to study the effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK receptor expression. We explored IL-2 mediated response by using NK1.1 as pan-NK marker to check for NK specific proliferation response. Ly49 receptors are type II C-type lectin-like membrane receptors coded by a family of highly polymorphic and polygenic genes. Ly49 receptors recognize H-2 class-I molecules on target cells. The inhibitory Ly49 receptors are involved in NK cell education, a process in which NK cells acquire function and tolerance toward cells that express “self-MHC-I.” C57BL/6 mice model used in the study, NK cells have H2b background in which therefore Ly49A is non-cognate MHC whereas Ly49C is bound by cognate MHC. In a milieu of high IL-2 concentration, we explored the modulation of inhibitory receptors Ly49A and Ly49C upon IL-2 stimulation. We observed significant increase in expression of inhibitory receptor Ly49A upon IL-2 stimulation ( $p < 0.05$ ) but no such significant increase in Ly49C expression ( $p > 0.05$ ). This implies that IL-2 caused a preferential skewed proliferation of population of NK cells expressing higher levels of Ly49A, which did not bind to

cognate MHC-I. However, Ly49C which binds to its cognate receptor, there was no significant increase in expression upon IL-2 stimulation ( $p>0.05$ ). Probably this was to ensure that there was no significant non-specific activation in the high IL-2 milieu, thus, prevented autoimmune reaction.

IL-2 stimulation also resulted in restoration of degranulation and cytokine producing ability of NK cells against tumor in Wiscott Aldrich syndrome patients (Kritikou et al., 2016). We therefore explored the possibility that IL-2 stimulation of NK cells might result in potentiation of NK activity. We determined the expression of activating receptor Ly49D on NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation. There was no significant increase in expression of Ly49D on IL-2 stimulated NK cells as compared to NK cells alone. Also, we detected a significant decrease in expression of Ly49D on per-cell basis despite expansion of NK cell population as seen in Figure 4.4, where there was a decrease in the population peak upon IL-2 stimulation. Thus, IL-2 caused expansion in NK cell population but did not upregulate activation receptor expression. This implies that in high IL-2 concentration the NK cells that underwent proliferation did not however overexpress their activation receptors, thus prevented hyperactivity. Further, we showed that upon IL-2 stimulation there was no significant increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production. This raised the question that in the presence of IL-2 in the tumor microenvironment, did IL-2 result in inactivation of NK cells. Therefore, we cultured IL-2 activated NK cells with YAC-1 (NK sensitive) target and explored NK activation potential. We observed a significant and robust increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  secretion upon co-culture with NK sensitive, YAC-1 target ( $p<0.05$ ). Hence we conclude that in tumor microenvironment where there was presence of tumor cells in context of high levels of IL-2, there was specific increase in activity of NK cells.

However in the absence of tumor cells an inherently hyperactive NK population stimulated by IL-2 would have resulted in non-contextual autoimmunity. Hence the hypo-responsiveness of the IL-2 induced expansion of NK population in a measure of extensive proliferation of potentially active NK cells but refrained from hyperactivity. Although such IL-2 expanded NK cells were hypoactive but upon encountering target cells like sensitive tumor cells, were capable of significantly robust NK activity.

Despite the potential role of immune system in controlling tumor progression, tumor cells adopt various strategies for evading NK cell response including modulation in expression levels of NK cell receptors. The present study involved the investigation of tumor induced modulation of NK receptor expression and activity. P815 cells are known to express high levels of MHC-I, thus being resistant to NK cell mediated cytotoxicity by engaging inhibitory receptors. We further wanted to explore whether NK resistant tumor cells could actively modulate NK receptor profile resulting in their ability to evade NK mediated cytotoxicity. Therefore, in our study we cultured IL-2 stimulated NK cells with P815 tumor cells. We observed that co-culturing of NK cells with P815 cells showed increase in expression of Ly49A and a significant higher increase in the inhibitory receptor Ly49C ( $p < 0.05$ ), which is the cognate receptor for the MHC haplotype of the mouse model (C57BL/6) used in our study. However no significant change in the expression of activating receptor Ly49D ( $p > 0.05$ ) was observed. This phenomenon was shown to be caused by P815 membrane derived components not by peptides secreted in the cell supernatant. Our experiments with transwell plates also suggested that direct cell to cell contact was essential for this alteration in NK receptor expression pattern by tumor derived factors. Thus, alteration of inhibitory receptor expressions compounded by over expression of MHC-I,



## *Discussion*

---

outweighed the activation signal, thus, ensured better escape of tumor cells by inhibition of NK cell activity. Though we observed increase in expression of NK cell surface marker NK1.1, it implies that presence of tumor membrane derived factors caused skewed proliferation of NK cells with higher expression of inhibitory receptors thus ensured resistance to NK cell cytotoxicity.

Thus, it was assumed that NK cell resistant P815 membrane derived peptides may interfere with NK cell activation potential by up-regulating the expression of cognate inhibitory Ly49 receptors, which significantly increased the inhibition signal and thus provided evidence for an active mechanism of inhibition of NK activity not by overexpression of MHC-I molecules. However the fact that inhibition of NK mediated P815 lysis was observed even if MHC-I molecules were blocked it has been suggested that other mechanisms were also actively employed by such P815 cells. Also, P815 cells showed some basal level of NK cytolytic activity compared to S2 *Drosophila* insect cell system thus further confirming active mechanism of engagement of receptor profile modulation by P815 cells (March et al., 2010). Co-culture of P815 derived peptide with NK cells also showed inhibition of NK cell cytokine release even in IL-2 induced expanded NK population. Such tumor specific NK proliferation of a skewed population and modulation of NK activation potential may be responsible for failure of certain NK mediated immunotherapy and these findings provide insights in devising strategies to interrupt inhibition of potentially NK resistant tumor cells.

NK cell receptors may belong to either Ig-superfamily of type I membrane receptor superfamily or C-type lectin family of type II membrane protein (as mentioned in section 1.3.2). Inhibitory KIRs are known to bind various HLA-A, HLA-B and HLA-

C alleles and CD94/NKG2A inhibitory receptors recognize non-classical HLA-E and HLA-G. It had been established that Extravillous trophoblast (EVT) cells lack classical MHC, HLA-A/B expression and expressed non-classical MHC class I molecules HLA-G, which may protected fetal tissues from maternal immune system (Tilburgs et al., 2015a) and NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA interaction resulted in better inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity than with classical HLA molecule that protected developing foetus from uterine NK cell cytotoxicity. Previously, it was shown that non-classical HLA molecule interaction with NKG2A as opposed to classical MHC binding to KIRs resulted in greater inhibition (Das and Long 2010). Surface expression of HLA-E was enough to protect target cells from lysis by CD94/NKG2A<sup>+</sup> NK-cell clones. It has also been established that inhibition of degranulation conferred resistance to NK-cell-mediated lysis (Das and Long 2010).

Despite the fact that both KIRs and NKG2A/CD94 belong to different families and have structural differences, both of these inhibitory receptors pursue similar downstream signalling events to inhibit NK cell activation. Therefore, the difference in inhibition potential is probably at the receptor-ligand interaction level. So, we explored the binding affinities of NK cell receptor with classical HLA vs non-classical HLA ligands to understand the reason for better inhibition potential of non-classical HLA interaction with cognate inhibitory receptor (NKG2A/CD94). Our results showed that there was a high diversity of bonding in NKG2A/CD94 inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA. Also, number of interface residues involved in interactions and presence of different chains were numerous in case of non-classical HLA molecules and NKG2A/CD94 complex. A significantly higher number of H-bonds were observed in case of non-classical HLA interaction with inhibitory receptors. This binding pattern of

## *Discussion*

---

NK receptors with their cognate ligand may be responsible for stronger affinity of NK receptor NKG2A/CD94 towards its ligand non-classical HLA molecules. Also, Ramachandran plot showed that almost all amino acid residues of NKG2A/CD94-HLAE and NKG2A/CD94-HLAG complexes were positioned in the favoured and allowed region compared to KIRs-classical HLAs complexes. This implies better stability and stronger affinity of NK receptor and non-classical HLA molecules as compared to NK receptor and classical HLA molecules, thus providing supportive evidence for difference in inhibition potential upon engagement of the two different types of inhibitory receptors.

In case of some tumor cells there is an increased expression of non-classical HLA molecules and in such tumor microenvironment NK cell receptor interaction with non-classical MHC molecules results in impairment of NK cell activity and thereby promotes cancer progression. Thus, our study provides insights in understanding the difference in inhibition potential of individual NK receptors with their cognate ligands. These findings can be correlated with their impact on cancer susceptibility and will help to design novel therapeutic strategies for cancer.

*Chapter 6*  
*Conclusion*

---

## CHAPTER 6

### CONCLUSION

---

Natural Killer (NK) cells play a fundamental role against viral infections and tumors. These are known to exert cytotoxicity against tumor cells and secreting cytokines to inhibit tumor progression. Therefore, Natural Killer cells are known to play a very significant role in immunity against tumor cells. NK cell triggering is dependent upon specific combination of NK receptor and ligand on tumor cells. Weak expression of MHC class I molecule on target cell leads to NK cell activation. In contrast, interaction between normal levels of self MHC class I molecule bearing tumor cells and NK cells, induce inhibitory signal. This is the phenomenon of NK activation through ‘missing self’ hypothesis by which inhibition receptors are engaged by MHC class-I molecules, thus preventing autoimmunity. Tumor cells adopt various strategies for evading NK cell response including modulation in expression levels of NK cell receptors. IL-2 is known to induce durable NK cell expansion and modulation of their cytotoxic function. IL-2 has proved to be one of the main treatment modalities in complete or apparently curative regression of different tumors. It has been established that activation of NK cells with IL-2 lead to enhanced NK cells cytotoxicity against tumor. So, we wanted to explore the effect of IL-2 on NK cell receptor profile. Murine NK cells are best characterized by the expression of surface marker NK1.1. Therefore, in our study, purified NK cells were stimulated with IL-2 (100U) and we observed a definitive increase in NK cell population upon IL-2 stimulation upon overnight incubation as compared with un-induced controls ( $p < 0.05$ ). We explored the possibility that IL-2

## *Conclusion*

---

stimulation of NK cells itself might result in potentiation of NK activity. The inhibitory receptor Ly49A binds to H-2D<sup>d</sup> and H-2D<sup>k</sup> antigens bearing target cells and Ly49C recognizes H-2b antigens. NK harvested from C57BL/6 mice has H2b background and thus Ly49C is the cognate inhibitory receptor. It was observed that the expression of inhibitory receptor Ly49A increased upon stimulation with IL-2 ( $p < 0.05$ ) while there was no alteration in inhibitory receptor Ly49C expression. Hence, our result showed that IL-2 induced stimulation of NK inhibitory receptor expression was more on non-cognate inhibitory receptor, Ly49A. We further determined the expression of activating receptor Ly49D on NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation. There was no significant increase in expression of Ly49D on IL-2 stimulated NK cells as compared to unstimulated NK cells. Thus, IL-2 stimulation resulted in increase in NK cell population but did not induce upregulation of activation receptor expression. Further, we noticed that there was no appreciable increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production by the NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation as compared with un-stimulated NK cells.

As we did not notice any stimulation of NK activity as observed by the absence of upregulation of activating receptor expression, Ly49D or significant downregulation of cognate inhibitory receptor, Ly49C, we suspected that IL-2 stimulation of NK cells resulted in hypoactivity. To analyse this possibility, we incubated IL-2 stimulated and un-induced NK cells with NK sensitive YAC-1 tumor cells. NK cells potentially mounted a very robust response in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production in the presence of susceptible tumor cells (YAC-1). This implies that in high IL-2 concentration NK cells undergo proliferation and are hypoactive under in the absence of tumor cells to circumvent non-contextual autoimmunity. However, in the presence of sensitive tumor, IL-2 stimulated NK showed enhanced activity against tumor targets.

Despite various mechanisms followed by immune cells of the body, most significantly T-cells and NK cells, tumor cells in the tumor microenvironment often develop strategies for immune evasion. In the present study, we investigated the tumor induced modulation of NK cell receptors by culturing IL-2 stimulated NK cells with NK resistant, P815 tumor targets. We explored the mechanism of tumor induced immune evasion by co-culturing tumor with IL-2 activated NK cells. Our results conclusively showed that P815 membrane derived factors were responsible for a specific upregulation of inhibitory receptor, Ly49C, which is the cognate receptor for MHC-I expressed in mice model studied (C57BL/6). There was also an increase in the non-cognate inhibitory receptor expression mediated by tumor factors. However, the specific upregulation of cognate receptor mediated by tumor upon engagement of its ligand is clearly a strategy that the tumor cells employ in order to inhibit NK activity. Further, tumor cells did not show any significant modulation of activation receptors on NK cells.

In humans, inhibitory receptor KIRs bind to classical HLA molecules and NKG2A/CD94 bind to non-classical HLA molecules; HLA-G/HLA-E (mentioned in Section 3.10). It has been established that NK inhibitory receptor and non-classical HLA interaction results in better inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity as compared with interaction of NK inhibitory receptor with classical HLA. Since the inhibitory signal transduction events downstream of KIRs and NKG2 receptors are essentially similar, the difference in their inhibition potential was explored in the context of their affinities for their respective cognate ligands. Our results showed that there was high diversity of bonding (more number of Hydrogen bonds, non-hydrophobic interactions Sulphide bonds, salt bridges) between non-classical HLA binding and NKG2A/CD94 inhibitory receptor complex compared with KIRs and classical HLA complex. Also, more number

## *Conclusion*

---

of interface residues and different amino acids were involved in interaction of NKG2A/CD94 with non-classical HLA. This binding pattern of NKG2A/CD94 NK receptors with their cognate ligand may be responsible for stronger affinity of NK receptor NKG2A/CD94 with its ligand non-classical HLA molecules.

Altogether, our study conclude that in tumor microenvironment where there is presence of tumor cells in context of high levels of IL-2, there is specific increase in activity of NK cells. However in the absence of tumor cells an inherently hyperactive NK population stimulated by IL-2 would have resulted in non-contextual autoimmunity. Thus, IL-2 plays an important role in proliferative expression and potentiating NK cell activity such that IL-2 stimulated NK cells are able to kill tumor cells more efficiently. Our findings are particularly significant in designing strategies for immunotherapeutics in conjunction with IL-2 combinatorial therapies.

P815 membrane derived peptide interfered with the NK cell function by actively modulating the surface expression of NK cell inhibitory receptors and responsible for downregulation of NK activity against P815 tumor cells. In view of this immunosuppressive effect, a new approach might be developed to interrupt inhibition of potentially NK resistant tumor cells, thus enabling better immunotherapy.

Our study provides further explanation for the fact that NK cells in extravillous trophoblast cells specifically upregulate their non-classical HLA but classical HLA and therefore, spared by maternal NK cell cytotoxicity. Moreover, understanding of difference in inhibition potential of individual NK receptors with their cognate ligands can be correlated with their influence on cancer and will help to design novel therapeutic strategies for cancer.



## *References*

---

## REFERENCES

---

- Abboud G, Tahiliani V, Desai P, Varkoly K, Driver J, Hutchinson TE, Salek-Ardakani S (2016) Natural Killer Cells and Innate Interferon Gamma Participate in the Host Defense against Respiratory Vaccinia Virus Infection. *Journal of Virology* 90:129-141
- Åkesson C, Uvebrant K, Oderup C, Lynch K, Harris RA, Lernmark å, Agardh C-D, Cilio CM (2010) Altered natural killer (NK) cell frequency and phenotype in latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) prior to insulin deficiency: Altered NK cell frequency in LADA. *Clinical & Experimental Immunology*: 161:48-56
- Al Omar SY, Marshall E, Middleton D, Christmas SE (2011) Increased killer immunoglobulin-like receptor expression and functional defects in natural killer cells in lung cancer. *Immunology* 133:94-104
- Amand M, Iserentant G, Poli A, Sleiman M, Fievez V, Sanchez IP, Sauvageot N, Michel T, Aouali N, Janji B (2017) Human CD56dimCD16dim cells as an individualized Natural Killer cell subset. *Frontiers in Immunology* 8:699
- Amedei A, Nicolai E, Benaglio M, Della Bella C, Cianchi F, Bechi P, Taddei A, Bencini L, Farsi M, Cappello P (2013) Ex vivo analysis of pancreatic cancer-infiltrating T lymphocytes reveals that ENO-specific Tregs accumulate in tumor tissue and inhibit Th1/Th17 effector cell functions. *Cancer immunology, immunotherapy* 62:1249-1260
- Arango Duque G, Descoteaux A (2014) Macrophage cytokines: involvement in immunity and infectious diseases. *Frontiers in immunology* 5:491
- Arase H, Arase N, Saito T (1995) Fas-mediated cytotoxicity by freshly isolated natural killer cells. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 181:1235-1238

## References

---

- Arnon TI, Achdout H, Lieberman N, Gazit R, Gonen-Gross T, Katz G, Bar-Ilan A, Bloushtain N, Lev M, Joseph A (2004) The mechanisms controlling the recognition of tumor-and virus-infected cells by NKp46. *Blood* 103:664-672
- Augusto DG (2016) The Impact of KIR Polymorphism on the Risk of Developing Cancer: Not as Strong as Imagined? *Frontiers in genetics* 7:121
- Augusto DG, Lobo-Alves SC, Melo MF, Pereira NF, Petzl-Erler ML (2012) Activating KIR and HLA Bw4 Ligands Are Associated to Decreased Susceptibility to Pemphigus Foliaceus, an Autoimmune Blistering Skin Disease. *PloS one* 7:e39991
- Aziz S, Ahmed SS, Ali A, Khan FA, Zulfiqar G, Iqbal J, Khan AA, Shoaib M (2015) Salivary Immunosuppressive Cytokines IL-10 and IL-13 Are Significantly Elevated in Oral Squamous Cell Carcinoma Patients. *Cancer Investigation* 33:318-328
- Baginska J, Viry E, Paggetti J, Medves S, Berchem G, Moussay E, Janji B (2013) The Critical Role of the Tumor Microenvironment in Shaping Natural Killer Cell-Mediated Anti-Tumor Immunity. *Frontiers in Immunology* 4:490
- Barao I, Hudig D, Ascensao JL (2003) IL-15-mediated induction of LFA-1 is a late step required for cytotoxic differentiation of human NK cells from CD34+ Lin- bone marrow cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 171:683-690
- Barnie PA, Zhang P, Lv H, Wang D, Su X, Su Z, Xu H (2017) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells and myeloid regulatory cells in cancer and autoimmune disorders. *Experimental and therapeutic medicine* 13:378-388
- Beatty GL, Gladney WL (2015) Immune Escape Mechanisms as a Guide for Cancer Immunotherapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 21:687-692
- Beldi-Ferchiou A, Caillat-Zucman S (2017) Control of NK Cell Activation by Immune Checkpoint Molecules. *International journal of molecular sciences* 18:2129
- Bellomo C, Caja L, Moustakas A (2016) Transforming growth factor  $\beta$  as regulator of cancer stemness and metastasis. *British Journal of Cancer* 115:761-769

- Billadeau DD, Upshaw JL, Schoon RA, Dick CJ, Leibson PJ (2003) NKG2D-DAP10 triggers human NK cell-mediated killing via a Syk-independent regulatory pathway. *Nature immunology* 4:557
- Benson DM, Caligiuri MA (2014) Cancer Immunology at the Crossroads: Killer immunoglobulin-like receptors and tumor immunity. *Cancer Immunology Research* 2(2):99-104
- Beksac K, Beksac M, Dalva K, Karaagaoglu E, Tirnaksiz MB (2015) Impact of “Killer Immunoglobulin-Like Receptor /Ligand” Genotypes on Outcome following Surgery among Patients with Colorectal Cancer: Activating KIRs Are Associated with Long-Term Disease Free Survival. *PLoS ONE* 10(7):e0132526
- Birge RB, Boeltz S, Kumar S, Carlson J, Wanderley J, Calianese D, Barcinski M, Brekken RA, Huang X, Hutchins JT, Freimark B, Empig C, Mercer J, Schroit AJ, Schett G, Herrmann M (2016) Phosphatidylserine is a global immunosuppressive signal in efferocytosis, infectious disease and cancer. *Cell Death & Differentiation* 23:962-978
- Boyington JC, Motyka SA, Schuck P, Brooks AG, Sun PD (2000) Structure of a complex between the human natural killer cell receptor kir2dl2 and a class I MHC ligand HLA-CW3. *Nature* 405:537-543
- Brandstadter JD, Yang Y (2011) Natural killer cell responses to viral infection. *Journal of innate immunity* 3:274-279
- Braun DA, Fribourg M, Sealfon SC (2013) Cytokine Response Is Determined by Duration of Receptor and Signal Transducers and Activators of Transcription 3 (STAT3) Activation. *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 288:2986-2993
- Bryceson YT (2006) Synergy among receptors on resting NK cells for the activation of natural cytotoxicity and cytokine secretion. *Blood* 107:159-166
- Bryceson YT, Ljunggren H-G, Long EO (2009) Minimal requirement for induction of natural cytotoxicity and intersection of activation signals by inhibitory receptors. *Blood* 114:2657-2666

## *References*

---

- Burkholder B, Huang R-Y, Burgess R, Luo S, Jones VS, Zhang W, Lv Z-Q, Gao C-Y, Wang B-L, Zhang Y-M, Huang R-P (2014) Tumor-induced perturbations of cytokines and immune cell networks. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Reviews on Cancer* 1845:182-201
- Bussard KM, Mutkus L, Stumpf K, Gomez-Manzano C, Marini FC (2016) Tumor-associated stromal cells as key contributors to the tumor microenvironment. *Breast cancer research : BCR* 18:84
- Carayannopoulos LN, Naidenko OV, Fremont DH, Yokoyama WM (2002) Cutting edge: murine UL16-binding protein-like transcript 1: a newly described transcript encoding a high-affinity ligand for murine NKG2D. *The Journal of Immunology* 169:4079-4083
- Carlino C, Trotta E, Stabile H, Morrone S, Bulla R, Soriani A, Iannitto ML, Agostinis C, Mocchi C, Minozzi M (2012) Chemerin regulates NK cell accumulation and endothelial cell morphogenesis in the decidua during early pregnancy. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism* 97:3603-3612
- Carlyle JR, Martin A, Mehra A, Attisano L, Tsui FW, Zúñiga-Pflücker JC (1999) Mouse NKR-P1B, a novel NK1. 1 antigen with inhibitory function. *The Journal of Immunology* 162:5917-5923
- Carotta S (2016) Targeting NK Cells for Anticancer Immunotherapy: Clinical and Preclinical Approaches. *Frontiers in immunology* 7:152
- Castriconi R, Dondero A, Bellora F, Moretta L, Castellano A, Locatelli F, Corrias MV, Moretta A, Bottino C (2013) Neuroblastoma-Derived TGF- 1 Modulates the Chemokine Receptor Repertoire of Human Resting NK Cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 190:5321-5328
- Cekic C, Day Y-J, Sag D, Linden J (2014) Myeloid Expression of Adenosine A2A Receptor Suppresses T and NK Cell Responses in the Solid Tumor Microenvironment. *Cancer research* 74:7250-7259

- Cerwenka A, Bakker AB, McClanahan T, Wagner J, Wu J, Phillips JH, Lanier LL (2000) Retinoic acid early inducible genes define a ligand family for the activating NKG2D receptor in mice. *Immunity* 12:721-727
- Chaudhary B, Elkord E (2016) Regulatory T cells in the tumor microenvironment and cancer progression: role and therapeutic targeting. *Vaccines* 4:28
- Cheng M, Chen Y, Xiao W, Sun R, Tian Z (2013) NK cell-based immunotherapy for malignant diseases. *Cellular & molecular immunology* 10:230-252
- Chester C, Fritsch K, Kohrt HE (2015) Natural Killer Cell Immunomodulation: Targeting Activating, Inhibitory, and Co-stimulatory Receptor Signaling for Cancer Immunotherapy. *Frontiers in immunology* 6:601
- Chew V, Chen J, Lee D, Loh E, Lee J, Lim KH, Weber A, Slankamenac K, Poon RTP, Yang H, Ooi LLPJ, Toh HC, Heikenwalder M, Ng IOL, Nardin A, Abastado J-P (2012a) Chemokine-driven lymphocyte infiltration: an early intratumoural event determining long-term survival in resectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gut* 61:427-438
- Chew V, Toh HC, Abastado J-P (2012b) Immune Microenvironment in Tumor Progression: Characteristics and Challenges for Therapy. *Journal of Oncology* 2012:1-10
- Chisholm SE, Reyburn HT (2006) Recognition of vaccinia virus-infected cells by human natural killer cells depends on natural cytotoxicity receptors. *Journal of Virology* 80:2225-2233
- Chopra M, Riedel SS, Biehl M, Krieger S, von Krosigk V, B auerlein CA, Brede C, Jordan Garrote A-L, Kraus S, Sch afer V (2013) Tumor necrosis factor receptor 2-dependent homeostasis of regulatory T cells as a player in TNF-induced experimental metastasis. *Carcinogenesis* 34:1296-1303

## *References*

---

- Clements CS, Kjer-Nielsen L, Kostenko L, Hoare HL, Dunstone MA, Moses E, Freed K, Brooks AG, Rossjohn J, McCluskey J (2005) Crystal structure of HLA-G: a nonclassical MHC class I molecule expressed at the fetal–maternal interface. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 102:3360-3365
- Connolly EC, Freimuth J, Akhurst RJ (2012) Complexities of TGF- $\beta$  Targeted Cancer Therapy. *International journal of biological sciences* 8:964-978
- Conway EM, Pikor LA, Kung SH, Hamilton MJ, Lam S, Lam WL, Bennewith KL (2016) Macrophages, inflammation, and lung cancer. *American journal of respiratory and critical care medicine* 193:116-130
- Costa-Garcia M, Vera A, Moraru M, Vilches C, López-Botet M, Muntasell A (2015) Antibody-Mediated Response of NKG2C bright NK Cells against Human Cytomegalovirus. *The Journal of Immunology* 194:2715-2724
- Cremer I, Fridman WH, Sautès-Fridman C (2012) Tumor microenvironment in NSCLC suppresses NK cells function. *OncoImmunology* 1:244-246
- Croce M, Rigo V, Ferrini S (2015) IL-21: A Pleiotropic Cytokine with Potential Applications in Oncology. *Journal of immunology research* 2015:1-15
- Cui Y, Guo G (2016) Immunomodulatory Function of the Tumor Suppressor p53 in Host Immune Response and the Tumor Microenvironment. *International journal of molecular sciences* 17:1942
- Dam J, Guan R, Natarajan K, Dimasi N, Chlewicki LK, Kranz DM, Schuck P, Margulies DH, Mariuzza RA (2003) Variable MHC class I engagement by Ly49 natural killer cell receptors demonstrated by the crystal structure of Ly49C bound to H-2K b. *Nature immunology* 4:1213
- Daniels KA, Devora G, Lai WC, O'Donnell CL, Bennett M, Welsh RM (2001) Murine cytomegalovirus is regulated by a discrete subset of natural killer cells reactive with monoclonal antibody to Ly49H. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 194:29-44

- Davis ZB, Felices M, Verneris MR, Miller JS (2015) Natural Killer Cell Adoptive Transfer Therapy: Exploiting the First Line of Defense Against Cancer. *The Cancer Journal* 21:486-491
- Das A, Long EO (2010) Lytic granule polarization, rather than degranulation, is the preferred target of inhibitory receptors in NK cells. *Journal of Immunology* 185:4698–704
- de Ruiter EJ, Ooft ML, Devriese LA, Willems SM (2017) The prognostic role of tumor infiltrating T-lymphocytes in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *OncoImmunology* 6:e1356148
- Della Chiesa M, Falco M, Muccio L, Bertaina A, Locatelli F, Moretta A (2013) Impact of HCMV Infection on NK Cell Development and Function after HSCT. *Frontiers in Immunology* 4:458
- Dokun AO, Chu DT, Yang L, Bendelac AS, Yokoyama WM (2001) Analysis of In Situ NK Cell Responses During Viral Infection. *The Journal of Immunology* 167:5286-5293
- Du W, Yang M, Turner A, Xu C, Ferris R, Huang J, Kane L, Lu B (2017) TIM-3 as a Target for Cancer Immunotherapy and Mechanisms of Action. *International journal of molecular sciences* 18:645
- Dupuy S, Lambert M, Zucman D, Choukem S-P, Tognarelli S, Pages C, Lebbe C, Caillat-Zucman S (2012) Human Herpesvirus 8 (HHV8) sequentially shapes the NK cell repertoire during the course of asymptomatic infection and Kaposi sarcoma. *PLoS pathogens* 8:e1002486
- El-Emshaty HM, Nasif WA, Mohamed IE (2015) Serum Cytokine of IL-10 and IL-12 in Chronic Liver Disease: The Immune and Inflammatory Response. *Disease Markers* 2015:1-7
- El-Gazzar A, Groh V, Spies T (2013) Immunobiology and Conflicting Roles of the Human NKG2D Lymphocyte Receptor and Its Ligands in Cancer. *The Journal of Immunology* 191:1509-1515



## *References*

---

- Esin S, Batoni G, Counoupas C, Stringaro A, Brancatisano FL, Colone M, Maisetta G, Florio W, Arancia G, Campa M (2008) Direct Binding of Human NK Cell Natural Cytotoxicity Receptor NKp44 to the Surfaces of Mycobacteria and Other Bacteria. *Infection and Immunity* 76:1719-1727
- Esin S, Counoupas C, Aulicino A, Brancatisano FL, Maisetta G, Bottai D, Di Luca M, Florio W, Campa M, Batoni G (2013) Interaction of Mycobacterium tuberculosis Cell Wall Components with the Human Natural Killer Cell Receptors NKp44 and Toll-Like Receptor 2. *Scandinavian Journal of Immunology* 77:460-469
- Esquivel-Velázquez M, Ostoa-Saloma P, Palacios-Arreola MI, Nava-Castro KE, Castro JI, Morales-Montor J (2015) The Role of Cytokines in Breast Cancer Development and Progression. *Journal of Interferon & Cytokine Research* 35:1-16
- Fan Y, Mao R, Yang J (2013) NF- $\kappa$ B and STAT3 signaling pathways collaboratively link inflammation to cancer. *Protein & Cell* 4:176-185
- Fan QR, Long, EO, Wiley DC (2001) Crystal structure of the human natural killer cell inhibitory receptor KIR2DL1 bound to its MHC ligand HLA-Cw4. *Nature Immunology* 2:452-460.
- Fang F, Xiao W, Tian Z (2017) NK cell-based immunotherapy for cancer. *Seminars in immunology* 31:37-54
- Faridi R, Agrawal S (2010) Killer immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs) and HLA-C allorecognition patterns implicative of dominant activation of natural killer cells contribute to recurrent miscarriages. *Human reproduction* 26:491-497
- Fauriat C, Long EO, Ljunggren H-G, Bryceson YT (2010) Regulation of human NK-cell cytokine and chemokine production by target cell recognition. *Blood* 115:2167-2176
- Favreau M, Vanderkerken K, Elewaut D, Venken K, Menu E (2016) Does an NKT-cell-based immunotherapeutic approach have a future in multiple myeloma? *Oncotarget* 7:23128

- Ferreira LM, Meissner TB, Tilburgs T, Strominger JL (2017) HLA-G: At the Interface of Maternal–Fetal Tolerance. *Trends in immunology* 38:272-286
- Feyaerts D, Benner M, van Cranenbroek B, van der Heijden OWH, Joosten I, van der Molen RG (2017) Human uterine lymphocytes acquire a more experienced and tolerogenic phenotype during pregnancy. *Scientific reports* 7:2884
- Fox A, Horby P, van Doorn HR, Trung NV, Ha NH, Cap NT, Phu VD, Ha NM, Ngoc DNT, Ngoc BVT (2012) Severe pandemic H1N1 2009 infection is associated with transient NK and T deficiency and aberrant CD8 responses. *PloS one* 7:e31535
- Fridman WH, Pagès F, Sautès-Fridman C, Galon J (2012) The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. *Nature Reviews Cancer* 12:nrc3245
- Fujii S, Shimizu K, Okamoto Y, Kunii N, Nakayama T, Motohashi S, Taniguchi M (2013) NKT cells as an ideal anti-tumor immunotherapeutic. *Frontiers in immunology* 4:409
- Fusco C, Guerini FR, Nocera G, Ventrella G, Caputo D, Valentino MA, Agliardi C, Gallotti J, Morra VB, Florio C (2010) KIRs and their HLA ligands in remitting–relapsing multiple sclerosis. *Journal of neuroimmunology* 229:232-237
- Gajewski TF, Schreiber H, Fu Y-X (2013) Innate and adaptive immune cells in the tumor microenvironment. *Nature immunology* 14:1014-1022
- Gapin L (2008) The making of NKT cells. *Nature immunology* 9:1009-1011
- Garnelo M, Tan A, Her Z, Yeong J, Lim CJ, Chen J, Lim KH, Weber A, Chow P, Chung A, Ooi LLP, Toh HC, Heikenwalder M, Ng IOL, Nardin A, Chen Q, Abastado J-P, Chew V (2017) Interaction between tumour-infiltrating B cells and T cells controls the progression of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gut* 66:342-351
- Garrity D, Call ME, Feng J, Wucherpfennig KW (2005) The activating NKG2D receptor assembles in the membrane with two signaling dimers into a hexameric structure. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 102:7641-7646

## References

---

- Gaynor LM, Colucci F (2017) Uterine Natural Killer Cells: Functional Distinctions and Influence on Pregnancy in Humans and Mice. *Frontiers in immunology* 8:467
- George TC, Mason LH, Ortaldo JR, Kumar V, Bennett M (1999) Positive recognition of MHC class I molecules by the Ly49D receptor of murine NK cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 162:2035-2043
- Ghadially H, Brown L, Lloyd C, Lewis L, Lewis A, Dillon J, Sainson R, Jovanovic J, Tigue NJ, Bannister D, Bamber L, Valge-Archer V, Wilkinson RW (2017) MHC class I chain-related protein A and B (MICA and MICB) are predominantly expressed intracellularly in tumour and normal tissue. *British Journal of Cancer* 116:1208-1217
- Ghasemi R, Lazear E, Wang X, Arefanian S, Zheleznyak A, Carreno BM, Higashikubo R, Gelman AE, Kreisel D, Fremont DH, Krupnick AS (2016) Selective targeting of IL-2 to NKG2D bearing cells for improved immunotherapy. *Nature Communications* 7:12878
- Gilfillan S, Chan CJ, Cella M, Haynes NM, Rapaport AS, Boles KS, Andrews DM, Smyth MJ, Colonna M (2008) DNAM-1 promotes activation of cytotoxic lymphocytes by nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells and tumors. *The Journal of experimental medicine* 205:2965-2973
- Gilfillan S, Ho EL, Cella M, Yokoyama WM, Colonna M (2002) NKG2D recruits two distinct adapters to trigger NK cell activation and costimulation. *Nature immunology* 3:1150
- Gleason MK, Ross JA, Warlick ED, Lund TC, Verneris MR, Wiernik A, Spellman S, Haagenson MD, Lenvik AJ, Litzow MR (2014) CD16xCD33 bispecific killer cell engager (BiKE) activates NK cells against primary MDS and MDSC CD33+ targets. *Blood* 123:3016-3026
- Gonen-Gross T, Goldman-Wohl D, Huppertz B, Lankry D, Greenfield C, Natanson-Yaron S, Hamani Y, Gilad R, Yagel S, Mandelboim O (2010) Inhibitory NK receptor recognition of HLA-G: regulation by contact residues and by cell specific expression at the fetal-maternal interface. *PLoS one* 5:e8941

- Green DS, Young HA, Valencia JC (2017) Current prospects of type II interferon  $\gamma$  signaling and autoimmunity. *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 292:13925-13933
- Gur C, Enk J, Kassem SA, Suissa Y, Magenheim J, Stolovich-Rain M, Nir T, Achdout H, Glaser B, Shapiro J, Naparstek Y, Porgador A, Dor Y, Mandelboim O (2011) Recognition and Killing of Human and Murine Pancreatic Cells by the NK Receptor NKp46. *The Journal of Immunology* 187:3096-3103
- Hadrup S, Donia M, Straten P (2013) Effector CD4 and CD8 T Cells and Their Role in the Tumor Microenvironment. *Cancer Microenvironment* 6:123-133
- Halfteck GG, Elboim M, Gur C, Achdout H, Ghadially H, Mandelboim O (2009) Enhanced in vivo growth of lymphoma tumors in the absence of the NK-activating receptor NKp46/NCR1. *The Journal of Immunology* 182:2221-2230
- Ham B, Fernandez MC, D'Costa Z, Brodt P (2016) The diverse roles of the TNF axis in cancer progression and metastasis:33
- Hanke N, Alizadeh D, Katsanis E, Larmonier N (2013) Dendritic Cell Tumor Killing Activity and Its Potential Applications in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Critical Reviews in Immunology* 33:1-21
- Hannani D, Ma Y, Yamazaki T, Déchanet-Merville J, Kroemer G, Zitvogel L (2012) Harnessing  $\gamma\delta$  T cells in anticancer immunotherapy. *Trends in immunology* 33:199-206
- Hargadon KM (2013) Tumor-altered dendritic cell function: implications for anti-tumor immunity. *Frontiers in immunology* 4:192
- Harimoto H, Shimizu M, Nakagawa Y, Nakatsuka K, Wakabayashi A, Sakamoto C, Takahashi H (2013) Inactivation of tumor-specific CD8(+) CTLs by tumor-infiltrating tolerogenic dendritic cells. *Immunology and cell biology* 91:545-555
- Hasmim M, Messai Y, Ziani L, Thiery J, Bouhris JH, Noman MZ, Chouaib S (2015) Critical Role of Tumor Microenvironment in Shaping NK Cell Functions: Implication of Hypoxic Stress. *Frontiers in immunology* 6:482

## *References*

---

- He C-B, Lin X-J (2017) Inflammation scores predict the survival of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma who were treated with transarterial chemoembolization and recombinant human type-5 adenovirus H101. *PloS one* 12:e0174769
- Held W (2013) Inhibitory Receptors and Their Mode of Action: Key Insights from NK Cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 191:3489-3490
- Herberman RB (1981) Natural killer cells: their roles in defenses against disease. *Science* 214:24-30
- Herberman RB, Nunn ME, Lavrin DH (1975) Natural cytotoxic reactivity of mouse lymphoid cells against syngeneic and allogeneic tumors. I. Distribution of reactivity and specificity. *International journal of cancer* 16:216-229
- Herman JM, Wild AT, Wang H, Tran PT, Chang KJ, Taylor GE, Donehower RC, Pawlik TM, Ziegler MA, Cai H, Savage DT, Canto MI, Klapman J, Reid T, Shah RJ, Hoffe SE, Rosemurgy A, Wolfgang CL, Laheru DA (2013) Randomized Phase III Multi-Institutional Study of TNFerade Biologic With Fluorouracil and Radiotherapy for Locally Advanced Pancreatic Cancer: Final Results. *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 31:886-894
- Hodge S, Hodge G, Flower R, Han P (2000) Surface and Intracellular Interleukin-2 Receptor Expression on Various Resting and Activated Populations Involved in Cell-Mediated Immunity in Human Peripheral Blood. *Scandinavian Journal of Immunology* 51:67-72
- Hollenbach JA, Pando MJ, Caillier SJ, Gourraud P-A, Oksenberg JR (2016) The killer immunoglobulin-like receptor KIR3DL1 in combination with HLA-Bw4 is protective against multiple sclerosis in African Americans. *Genes & Immunity* 17:199-202
- Houot R, Schultz LM, Marabelle A, Kohrt H (2015) T-cell-based Immunotherapy: Adoptive Cell Transfer and Checkpoint Inhibition. *Cancer Immunology Research* 3:1115-1122

- Inoue T, Adachi K, Kawana K, Taguchi A, Nagamatsu T, Fujimoto A, Tomio K, Yamashita A, Eguchi S, Nishida H, Nakamura H, Sato M, Yoshida M, Arimoto T, Wada-Hiraike O, Oda K, Osuga Y, Fujii T (2016) Cancer-associated fibroblast suppresses killing activity of natural killer cells through downregulation of poliovirus receptor (PVR/CD155), a ligand of activating NK receptor. *International journal of oncology* 49:1297-1304
- Ito M, Maruyama T, Saito N, Koganei S, Yamamoto K, Matsumoto N (2006) Killer cell lectin-like receptor G1 binds three members of the classical cadherin family to inhibit NK cell cytotoxicity. *The Journal of experimental medicine* 203:289-295
- Iwasaki A, Pillai PS (2014) Innate immunity to influenza virus infection. *Nature Reviews Immunology* 14:315-328
- Jarahian M, Watzl C, Fournier P, Arnold A, Djandji D, Zahedi S, Cerwenka A, Paschen A, Schirmacher V, Momburg F (2009) Activation of natural killer cells by newcastle disease virus hemagglutinin-neuraminidase. *Journal of Virology* 83:8108-8121
- Jiang J, Zhou Z, Li J, Ye Y, Chen Q (2012) Expression and significance of the NK cell receptors in primary hepatocellular carcinoma and paracancerous tissues. *Xi bao yu fen zi mian yi xue za zhi= Chinese journal of cellular and molecular immunology* 28:529-532
- Jiang T, Zhou C, Ren S (2016) Role of IL-2 in cancer immunotherapy. *OncoImmunology* 5:e1163462
- Jin S, Deng Y, Hao J-W, Li Y, Liu B, Yu Y, Shi F-D, Zhou Q-H (2014) NK Cell Phenotypic Modulation in Lung Cancer Environment. *PloS one* 9:e109976
- Jonsson AH, Yang L, Kim S, Taffner SM, Yokoyama WM (2010) Effects of MHC Class I Alleles on Licensing of Ly49A+ NK Cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 184:3424-3432
- Jost S, Altfeld M (2013) Control of human viral infections by natural killer cells. *Annual review of immunology* 31:163-94

## *References*

---

- Joyce MG, Sun PD (2011) The structural basis of ligand recognition by natural killer cell receptors. *BioMed Research International* 18;2011.
- Jungkunz-Stier I, Zekl M, Stühmer T, Einsele H, Seggewiss-Bernhardt R (2014) Modulation of natural killer cell effector functions through lenalidomide/dasatinib and their combined effects against multiple myeloma cells. *Leukemia & lymphoma* 55:168-176
- Kalaycio ME, George Negrea O, Allen SL, Rai KR, Abbasi RM, Horne H, Wegener WA, Goldenberg DM (2016) Subcutaneous injections of low doses of humanized anti-CD20 veltuzumab: a phase I study in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Leukemia & lymphoma* 57:803-811
- Karyampudi L, Lamichhane P, Scheid AD, Kalli KR, Shreeder B, Krempsi JW, Behrens MD, Knutson KL (2014) Accumulation of Memory Precursor CD8 T Cells in Regressing Tumors following Combination Therapy with Vaccine and Anti-PD-1 Antibody. *Cancer research* 74:2974-2985
- Kern DJ, James BR, Blackwell S, Gassner C, Klein C, Weiner GJ (2013) GA101 induces NK-cell activation and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity more effectively than rituximab when complement is present. *Leukemia & Lymphoma* 54:2500-2505
- Kiessling R, Klein E, Pross H, Wigzell H (1975a) Natural killer cells in the mouse. II. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells. Characteristics of the killer cell. *European journal of immunology* 5:117-121
- Kiessling R, Klein E, Wigzell H (1975b) Natural killer cells in the mouse. I. Cytotoxic cells with specificity for mouse Moloney leukemia cells. Specificity and distribution according to genotype. *European journal of immunology* 5:112-117
- Kim S-Y, Kang JW, Song X, Kim BK, Yoo YD, Kwon YT, Lee YJ (2013) Role of the IL-6-JAK1-STAT3-Oct-4 pathway in the conversion of non-stem cancer cells into cancer stem-like cells. *Cellular Signalling* 25:961-969

- Kinoshita H, Hirata Y, Nakagawa H, Sakamoto K, Hayakawa Y, Takahashi R, Nakata W, Sakitani K, Serizawa T, Hikiba Y (2013) Interleukin-6 mediates epithelial–stromal interactions and promotes gastric tumorigenesis. *PloS one* 8:e60914
- Klingemann HG, Martinson J (2004) *Ex vivo* expansion of natural killer cells for clinical applications. *Cytotherapy* 6:15-22
- Kritikou JS, Dahlberg CI, Baptista MA, Wagner AK, Banerjee PP, Gwalani LA, Poli C, Panda SK, Kärre K, Kaech SM, Wermeling F, Andersson J, Orange JS, Brauner H, Westerberg LS (2016) IL-2 in the tumor microenvironment is necessary for Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein deficient NK cells to respond to tumors in vivo. *Scientific Reports* 6:30636.
- Kruse PH, Matta J, Ugolini S, Vivier E (2014) Natural cytotoxicity receptors and their ligands. *Immunology and cell biology* 92:221-229
- Krzywinska E, Allende-Vega N, Cornillon A, Vo D-N, Cayrefourcq L, Panabieres C, Vilches C, Déchanet-Merville J, Hicheri Y, Rossi J-F (2015) Identification of anti-tumor cells carrying natural killer (NK) cell antigens in patients with hematological cancers. *EBioMedicine* 2:1364-1376
- Ladányi A, Kiss J, Mohos A, Somlai B, Liskay G, Gilde K, Fejős Z, Gaudi I, Dobos J, Tímár J (2011) Prognostic impact of B-cell density in cutaneous melanoma. *Cancer immunology, immunotherapy* 60:1729-1738
- Landskron G, De la Fuente M, Thuwajit P, Thuwajit C, Hermoso MA (2014) Chronic Inflammation and Cytokines in the Tumor Microenvironment. *Journal of immunology research* 2014:1-19
- Langers I, Renoux VM, Thiry M, Delvenne P, Jacobs N (2012) Natural killer cells: role in local tumor growth and metastasis. *Biologics : targets & therapy* 6:73-82
- Lanier LL (1998) NK cell receptors. *Annual review of immunology* 16:359-393
- Lanier LL (2005) NK cell recognition. *Annual review of immunology* 23:225-274



## *References*

---

- Lanier LL (2008) Up on the tightrope: natural killer cell activation and inhibition. *Nature immunology* 9:495
- Lanier LL (2009) DAP10- and DAP12-associated receptors in innate immunity. *Immunological reviews* 227:150-160
- Lanier LL, Corliss B, Phillips JH (1997) Arousal and inhibition of human NK cells. *Immunological reviews* 155:145-154
- Larsen SK, Gao Y, Basse PH (2014) NK Cells in the Tumor Microenvironment. *Critical Reviews in Oncogenesis* 19:91-105
- Lasek W, Zagożdżon R, Jakobisiak M (2014) Interleukin 12: still a promising candidate for tumor immunotherapy? *Cancer Immunology, Immunotherapy* 63:419-435
- Laskowski RA (2001) PDBsum: summaries and analyses of PDB structures. *Nucleic Acids Research* 29(1):221–222
- Laura D'Ignazio, Michael Batie, Sonia Rocha. Hypoxia and Inflammation in Cancer, Focus on HIF and NF- $\kappa$ B. *Biomedicines*. 2017 May 9;5(4):21
- Le Garff-Tavernier M, Decocq J, De Romeuf C, Parizot C, Dutertre C, Chapiro E, Davi F, Debré P, Prost J, Teillaud J (2011) Analysis of CD16<sup>+</sup> CD56<sup>dim</sup> NK cells from CLL patients: evidence supporting a therapeutic strategy with optimized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies. *Leukemia* 25:101
- Lee S-H, Girard S, Macina D, Busà M, Zafer A, Belouchi A, Gros P, Vidal SM (2001) Susceptibility to mouse cytomegalovirus is associated with deletion of an activating natural killer cell receptor of the C-type lectin superfamily. *Nature genetics* 28:42
- Levin AM, Bates DL, Ring AM, Krieg C, Lin JT, Su L, Moraga I, Raeber ME, Bowman GR, Novick P (2012) Exploiting a natural conformational switch to engineer an interleukin-2 'superkine'. *Nature* 484:529

- Li Q, Fu G-B, Zheng J-T, He J, Niu X-B, Chen Q-D, Yin Y, Qian X, Xu Q, Wang M, Sun A-F, Shu Y, Rui H, Liu L-Z, Jiang B-H (2013) NADPH oxidase subunit p22 phox -mediated reactive oxygen species contribute to angiogenesis and tumor growth through AKT and ERK1/2 signaling pathways in prostate cancer. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Molecular Cell Research* 1833:3375-3385
- Li T, Yi S, Liu W, Jia C, Wang G, Hua X, Tai Y, Zhang Q, Chen G (2013) Colorectal carcinoma-derived fibroblasts modulate natural killer cell phenotype and antitumor cytotoxicity. *Medical Oncology* 30:663
- Li Y, Wang Q, Mariuzza RA (2011) Structure of the human activating natural cytotoxicity receptor NKp30 bound to its tumor cell ligand B7-H6. *The Journal of experimental medicine* 208:703-714
- Li YL, Zhao H, Ren X-B, Li Y-L, Zhao H, Ren X-B (2016) Relationship of VEGF/VEGFR with immune and cancer cells: staggering or forward? *Cancer Biology & Medicine* 13:206-214
- Liao CM, Zimmer MI, Wang C-R (2013) The Functions of Type I and Type II Natural Killer T Cells in Inflammatory Bowel Diseases:. *Inflammatory Bowel Diseases* 19:1330-1338
- Liao W, Lin J-X, Leonard Warren J (2013) Interleukin-2 at the Crossroads of Effector Responses, Tolerance, and Immunotherapy. *Immunity* 38:13-25
- Lim O, Jung MY, Hwang YK, Shin E-C (2015) Present and future of allogeneic natural killer cell therapy. *Frontiers in Immunology* 6:286
- Lin W, Chen Y-L, Jiang L, Chen J-K (2011) Reduced expression of chemerin is associated with a poor prognosis and a lowed infiltration of both dendritic cells and natural killer cells in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clinical laboratory* 57:879-885
- Liu D, Peterson Mary E, Long Eric O (2012) The Adaptor Protein Crk Controls Activation and Inhibition of Natural Killer Cells. *Immunity* 36:600-611

## *References*

---

- Liu LL, Landskron J, Ask EH, Enqvist M, Sohlberg E, Traherne JA, Hammer Q, Goodridge JP, Larsson S, Jayaraman J, Oei VYS, Schaffer M, Taskén K, Ljunggren H-G, Romagnani C, Trowsdale J, Malmberg K-J, Béziat V (2016) Critical Role of CD2 Co-stimulation in Adaptive Natural Killer Cell Responses Revealed in NKG2C-Deficient Humans. *Cell reports* 15:1088-1099
- Ljutic B, Carlyle JR, Filipp D, Nakagawa R, Julius M, Zuniga-Pflucker JC (2005) Functional Requirements for Signaling through the Stimulatory and Inhibitory Mouse NKR-P1 (CD161) NK Cell Receptors. *The Journal of Immunology* 174:4789-4796
- Lokhorst HM, Plesner T, Laubach JP, Nahi H, Gimsing P, Hansson M, Minnema MC, Lassen U, Krejcik J, Palumbo A, van de Donk NWCJ, Ahmadi T, Khan I, Uhlar CM, Wang J, Sasser AK, Losic N, Lisby S, Basse L, Brun N, Richardson PG (2015) Targeting CD38 with Daratumumab Monotherapy in Multiple Myeloma. *New England Journal of Medicine* 373:1207-1219
- Long AG, Lundsmith ET, Hamilton KE (2017) Inflammation and Colorectal Cancer. *Current Colorectal Cancer Reports* 13:341-351
- Long EO, Sik Kim H, Liu D, Peterson ME, Rajagopalan S (2013) Controlling Natural Killer Cell Responses: Integration of Signals for Activation and Inhibition. *Annual review of immunology* 31:227-258
- Ma Y, Shurin GV, Peiyuan Z, Shurin MR (2013) Dendritic Cells in the Cancer Microenvironment. *Journal of Cancer* 4:36-44
- Maletzki C, Jahnke A, Ostwald C, Klar E, Prall F, Linnebacher M (2012) Ex-vivo Clonally Expanded B Lymphocytes Infiltrating Colorectal Carcinoma Are of Mature Immunophenotype and Produce Functional IgG. *PloS one* 7:e32639
- Mandal A, Viswanathan C (2015) Natural killer cells: In health and disease. *Hematology/Oncology and Stem Cell Therapy* 8:47-55

- Mandelboim O, Lieberman N, Lev M, Paul L, Arnon TI, Bushkin Y, Davis DM, Strominger JL, Yewdell JW, Porgador A (2001) Recognition of haemagglutinins on virus-infected cells by NKp46 activates lysis by human NK cells. *Nature* 409:1055
- March ME, Gross CC, Long EO (2010) Use of transfected Drosophila S2 cells to study NK cell activation. *Methods in Molecular Biology* 612:67-88
- Marcus A, Gowen BG, Thompson TW, Iannello A, Ardolino M, Deng W, Wang L, Shifrin N, Raulet DH (2014) Recognition of Tumors by the Innate Immune System and Natural Killer Cells. *Advances in Immunology* 91-128
- Marti LC, Pavon L, Severino P, Sibov T, Guilhen D, Moreira-Filho CA (2014) Vascular endothelial growth factor-A enhances indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase expression by dendritic cells and subsequently impacts lymphocyte proliferation. *Memórias do Instituto Oswaldo Cruz* 109:70-79
- Martin-Antonio B, Sune G, Perez-Amill L, Castella M, Urbano-Ispizua A (2017) Natural Killer Cells: Angels and Devils for Immunotherapy. *International journal of molecular sciences* 18:1868-1888
- Mathew SO, Chaudhary P, Powers SB, Vishwanatha JK, Mathew PA (2016) Overexpression of LLT1 (OCIL, CLEC2D) on prostate cancer cells inhibits NK cell-mediated killing through LLT1-NKRP1A (CD161) interaction. *Oncotarget* 7(42)
- Mathew SO, Rao KK, Kim JR, Bambard ND, Mathew PA (2009) Functional role of human NK cell receptor 2B4 (CD244) isoforms. *European journal of immunology* 39:1632-1641
- McKenna DH, Sumstad D, Bostrom N, Kadidlo DM, Fautsch S, McNearney S, DeWaard R, McGlave PB, Weisdorf DJ, Wagner JE (2007) Good manufacturing practices production of natural killer cells for immunotherapy: a six-year single-institution experience. *Transfusion* 47:520-528

## *References*

---

- Melero I, Rouzaut A, Motz GT, Coukos G (2014) T-Cell and NK-Cell Infiltration into Solid Tumors: A Key Limiting Factor for Efficacious Cancer Immunotherapy. *Cancer Discovery* 4:522-526
- Mentlik James A, Cohen AD, Campbell KS (2013) Combination immune therapies to enhance anti-tumor responses by NK cells. *Front Immunol* 4:481
- Metelitsa LS, Song L, Salo J, Engell K, Wu H-w, Sposto R, Seeger RC, Asgharzadeh S (2009) Natural Killer T (NKT) cells mediate anti-tumor activity via killing of tumor-associated macrophages (40.19). *Am Assoc Immunol*
- Miller JS (2005) Successful adoptive transfer and in vivo expansion of human haploidentical NK cells in patients with cancer. *Blood* 105:3051-3057
- Miller JS, Felice M, McElmurry R, McCullar V, Zhou X, Tolar J, Schmohl JU, Panoskaltis-Mortari A, Zhang B, Taras E (2015) Trispecific killer engagers (TriKEs) that contain IL-15 to make NK cells antigen specific and to sustain their persistence and expansion. *Am Soc Hematology*
- Mingari MC, Ponte M, Bertone S, Schiavetti F, Vitale C, Bellomo R, Moretta A, Moretta L (1998) HLA class I-specific inhibitory receptors in human T lymphocytes: interleukin 15-induced expression of CD94/NKG2A in superantigen-or alloantigen-activated CD8+ T cells. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 95:1172-1177
- Mitrovic M, Arapovic J, Jordan S, Fodil-Cornu N, Ebert S, Vidal SM, Krmpotic A, Reddehase MJ, Jonjic S (2012) The NK Cell Response to Mouse Cytomegalovirus Infection Affects the Level and Kinetics of the Early CD8+ T-Cell Response. *Journal of Virology* 86:2165-2175
- Monu NR, Frey AB (2012) Myeloid-Derived Suppressor Cells and anti-tumor T cells: a complex relationship. *Immunological Investigations* 41:595-613
- Moretta A, Bottino C, Vitale M, Pende D, Cantoni C, Mingari MC, Biassoni R, Moretta L (2001) Activating receptors and coreceptors involved in human natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *Annual review of immunology* 19:197-223

- Morschhauser F, Leonard JP, Fayad L, Coiffier B, Petillon M-O, Coleman M, Schuster SJ, Dyer MJ, Horne H, Teoh N (2009) Humanized anti-CD20 antibody, veltuzumab, in refractory/recurrent non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: phase I/II results. *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 27:3346-3353
- Muntasell A, Pupuleku A, Cisneros E, Vera A, Moraru M, Vilches C, López-Botet M (2016) Relationship of NKG2C Copy Number with the Distribution of Distinct Cytomegalovirus-Induced Adaptive NK Cell Subsets. *The Journal of Immunology* 196:3818-3827
- Nair S, Dhodapkar MV (2017) Natural Killer T Cells in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Frontiers in immunology* 8:1178
- Nielsen JS, Nelson BH (2012) Tumor-infiltrating B cells and T cells: Working together to promote patient survival. *OncoImmunology* 1:1623-1625
- Nieto-Velázquez NG, Torres-Ramos YD, Muñoz-Sánchez JL, Espinosa-Godoy L, Gómez-Cortés S, Moreno J, Moreno-Eutimio MA (2016) Altered Expression of Natural Cytotoxicity Receptors and NKG2D on Peripheral Blood NK Cell Subsets in Breast Cancer Patients. *Translational oncology* 9:384-391
- Öhlund D, Elyada E, Tuveson D (2014) Fibroblast heterogeneity in the cancer wound. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 211:1503-1523
- O'Leary JG, Goodarzi M, Drayton DL, von Andrian UH (2006) T cell–and B cell–independent adaptive immunity mediated by natural killer cells. *Nature immunology* 7:507
- Owen JL, Mohamadzadeh M (2013) Macrophages and chemokines as mediators of angiogenesis. *Frontiers in physiology* 4:159
- Paidipally P, Tripathi D, Van A, Radhakrishnan RK, Dhiman R, Venkatasubramanian S, Devalraju KP, Tvinnereim AR, Valluri VL, Vankayalapati R (2018) Interleukin-21 Regulates Natural Killer Cell Responses During Mycobacterium tuberculosis Infection. *The Journal of infectious diseases* 217:1323-1333

## *References*

---

- Pang Y, Gara SK, Achyut BR, Li Z, Yan HH, Day C-P, Weiss JM, Trinchieri G, Morris JC, Yang L (2013) TGF- $\beta$  signaling in myeloid cells is required for tumor metastasis. *Cancer Discovery* 3:936-951
- Parkhurst MR, Riley JP, Dudley ME, Rosenberg SA (2011) Adoptive Transfer of Autologous Natural Killer Cells Leads to High Levels of Circulating Natural Killer Cells but Does Not Mediate Tumor Regression. *Clinical Cancer Research* 17:6287-6297
- Paust S, Gill HS, Wang B-Z, Flynn MP, Moseman EA, Senman B, Szczepanik M, Telenti A, Askenase PW, Compans RW, von Andrian UH (2010) Critical role for the chemokine receptor CXCR6 in NK cell-mediated antigen-specific memory of haptens and viruses. *Nature immunology* 11:1127-1135
- Pegram HJ, Andrews DM, Smyth MJ, Darcy PK, Kershaw MH (2011) Activating and inhibitory receptors of natural killer cells. *Immunology & Cell Biology* 89: 216-224
- Pellett F, Siannis F, Vukin I, Lee P, Urowitz M, Gladman D (2007) KIRs and autoimmune disease: studies in systemic lupus erythematosus and scleroderma. *HLA* 69:106-108
- Peng H, Jiang X, Chen Y, Sojka DK, Wei H, Gao X, Sun R, Yokoyama WM, Tian Z (2013) Liver-resident NK cells confer adaptive immunity in skin-contact inflammation. *The Journal of clinical investigation* 123:1444-1456
- Perez-Martinez A, Iyengar R, Gan K, Chotsampancharoen T, Rooney B, Holladay M, Ramírez M, Leung W (2011) Blood Dendritic Cells Suppress NK Cell Function and Increase the Risk of Leukemia Relapse after Hematopoietic Cell Transplantation. *Biology of Blood and Marrow Transplantation* 17:598-607
- Petrie EJ, Clements CS, Lin J, Sullivan LC, Johnson D, Huyton T (2008) CD94-NKG2A recognition of human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-E bound to an HLA class I leader sequence. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 205:725-735

- Platonova S, Cherfils-Vicini J, Damotte D, Crozet L, Vieillard V, Validire P, André P, Dieu-Nosjean M-C, Alifano M, Régnard J-F (2011) Profound coordinated alterations of intratumoral NK cell phenotype and function in lung carcinoma. *Cancer research:canres.* 4179.2010
- Plougastel B, Dubbelde C, Yokoyama WM (2001) Cloning of Clr, a new family of lectin-like genes localized between mouse Nkrp1a and Cd69. *Immunogenetics* 53:209-214
- Pogge von Strandmann E, Simhadri VR, von Tresckow B, Sasse S, Reiners Katrin S, Hansen HP, Rothe A, Böll B, Simhadri VL, Borchmann P, McKinnon PJ, Hallek M, Engert A (2007) Human Leukocyte Antigen-B-Associated Transcript 3 Is Released from Tumor Cells and Engages the NKp30 Receptor on Natural Killer Cells. *Immunity* 27:965-974
- Pydi SS, Sunder SR, Venkatasubramanian S, Kovvali S, Jonnalagada S, Valluri VL (2013) Killer cell immunoglobulin like receptor gene association with tuberculosis. *Human immunology* 74:85-92
- Qian X, Wang X, Jin H (2014) Cell Transfer Therapy for Cancer: Past, Present, and Future. *Journal of immunology research* 2014:1-9
- Quatromoni JG, Eruslanov E (2012) Tumor-associated macrophages: function, phenotype, and link to prognosis in human lung cancer. *American journal of translational research* 4:376
- Rajagopalan S, Long EO (2005) Understanding how combinations of HLA and KIR genes influence disease. *The Journal of experimental medicine* 201:1025-1029
- Rajalingam R (2016) The Impact of HLA Class I-Specific Killer Cell Immunoglobulin-Like Receptors on Antibody-Dependent Natural Killer Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity and Organ Allograft Rejection. *Frontiers in Immunology* 7:585
- Reichlin A, Yokoyama WM (1998) Natural killer cell proliferation induced by anti-NK1.1 and IL-2. *Immunology and cell biology* 76:143-152



## References

---

- Rezvani K, Rouse RH (2015) The Application of Natural Killer Cell Immunotherapy for the Treatment of Cancer. *Frontiers in immunology* 6:578
- Robertson MJ, Ritz J (1990) Biology and clinical relevance of human natural killer cells. *Blood* 76:2421-2438
- Roda JM, Parihar R, Magro C, Nuovo GJ, Tridandapani S, Carson WE (2006) Natural Killer Cells Produce T Cell-Recruiting Chemokines in Response to Antibody-Coated Tumor Cells. *Cancer research* 66:517-526
- Rodon J, Carducci MA, Sepulveda-Sánchez JM, Azaro A, Calvo E, Seoane J, Braña I, Sicart E, Gueorguieva I, Cleverly AL, Pillay NS, Desai D, Estrem ST, Paz-Ares L, Holdhoff M, Blakeley J, Lahn MM, Baselga J (2015) First-in-Human Dose Study of the Novel Transforming Growth Factor- $\beta$  Receptor I Kinase Inhibitor LY2157299 Monohydrate in Patients with Advanced Cancer and Glioma. *Clinical Cancer Research* 21:553-560
- Rodríguez J, Zarate R, Bandres E, Boni V, Hernández A, Sola JJ, Honorato B, Bitarte N, García-Foncillas J (2012) Fc gamma receptor polymorphisms as predictive markers of Cetuximab efficacy in epidermal growth factor receptor downstream-mutated metastatic colorectal cancer. *European Journal of Cancer* 48:1774-1780
- Rölle A, Halenius A, Ewen EM, Cerwenka A, Hengel H, Momburg F (2016) CD2-CD58 interactions are pivotal for the activation and function of adaptive natural killer cells in human cytomegalovirus infection. *European journal of immunology* 46:2420-2425
- Romee R, Leong JW, Fehniger TA (2014) Utilizing Cytokines to Function-Enable Human NK Cells for the Immunotherapy of Cancer. *Scientifica* 2014:1-18
- Romee R, Rosario M, Berrien-Elliott MM, Wagner JA, Jewell BA, Schappe T, Leong JW, Abdel-Latif S, Schneider SE, Willey S, Neal CC, Yu L, Oh ST, Lee Y-S, Mulder A, Claas F, Cooper MA, Fehniger TA (2016) Cytokine-induced memory-like natural killer cells exhibit enhanced responses against myeloid leukemia. *Science translational medicine* 8:357ra123-357ra123

- Rosenberg SA, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Kammula US, Hughes MS, Phan GQ, Citrin DE, Restifo NP, Robbins PF, Wunderlich JR, Morton KE, Laurencot CM, Steinberg SM, White DE, Dudley ME (2011) Durable Complete Responses in Heavily Pretreated Patients with Metastatic Melanoma Using T-Cell Transfer Immunotherapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 17:4550-4557
- Rosental B, Brusilovsky M, Hadad U, Oz D, Appel MY, Afergan F, Yossef R, Rosenberg LA, Aharoni A, Cerwenka A, Campbell KS, Braiman A, Porgador A (2011) Proliferating Cell Nuclear Antigen Is a Novel Inhibitory Ligand for the Natural Cytotoxicity Receptor NKp44. *The Journal of Immunology* 187:5693-5702
- Sakamoto N, Ishikawa T, Kokura S, Okayama T, Oka K, Ideno M, Sakai F, Kato A, Tanabe M, Enoki T, Mineno J, Naito Y, Itoh Y, Yoshikawa T (2015) Phase I clinical trial of autologous NK cell therapy using novel expansion method in patients with advanced digestive cancer. *Journal of translational medicine* 13:277
- Sarhan D, Palma M, Mao Y, Adamson L, Kiessling R, Mellstedt H, Österborg A, Lundqvist A (2015) Dendritic cell regulation of NK-cell responses involves lymphotoxin- $\alpha$ , IL-12, and TGF- $\beta$ . *European journal of immunology* 45:1783-1793
- Sarkar S, Germeraad WT, Rouschop KM, Steeghs EM, van Gelder M, Bos GM, Wieten L (2013) Hypoxia induced impairment of NK cell cytotoxicity against multiple myeloma can be overcome by IL-2 activation of the NK cells. *PloS one* 8:e64835
- Schleypen JS (2006) Cytotoxic Markers and Frequency Predict Functional Capacity of Natural Killer Cells Infiltrating Renal Cell Carcinoma. *Clinical Cancer Research* 12:718-725
- Schlums H, Cichocki F, Tesi B, Theorell J, Beziat V, Holmes Tim D, Han H, Chiang Samuel CC, Foley B, Mattsson K, Larsson S, Schaffer M, Malmberg K-J, Ljunggren H-G, Miller Jeffrey S, Bryceson Yenan T (2015) Cytomegalovirus Infection Drives Adaptive Epigenetic Diversification of NK Cells with Altered Signaling and Effector Function. *Immunity* 42:443-456

## References

---

- Schmohl JU, Felices M, Taras E, Miller JS, Vallera DA (2016) Enhanced ADCC and NK Cell Activation of an Anticarcinoma Bispecific Antibody by Genetic Insertion of a Modified IL-15 Cross-linker. *Molecular Therapy* 24:1312-1322
- Sciafani F, Gonzalez de Castro D, Cunningham D, Hulkki Wilson S, Peckitt C, Capdevila J, Glimelius B, Rosello Keranen S, Wotherspoon A, Brown G, Tait D, Begum R, Thomas J, Oates J, Chau I (2014) Fc RIIa and Fc RIIIa Polymorphisms and Cetuximab Benefit in the Microscopic Disease. *Clinical Cancer Research* 20:4511-4519
- Scurr M, Ladell K, Besneux M, Christian A, Hockey T, Smart K, Bridgeman H, Hargest R, Phillips S, Davies M, Price D, Gallimore A, Godkin A (2014) Highly prevalent colorectal cancer-infiltrating LAP<sup>+</sup> Foxp3<sup>-</sup> T cells exhibit more potent immunosuppressive activity than Foxp3<sup>+</sup> regulatory T cells. *Mucosal Immunology* 7:428-439
- Sehn LH, Goy A, Offner FC, Martinelli G, Caballero MD, Gadeberg O, Baetz T, Zelenetz AD, Gaidano G, Fayad LE, Buckstein R, Friedberg JW, Crump M, Jaksic B, Zinzani PL, Padmanabhan Iyer S, Sahin D, Chai A, Fingerle-Rowson G, Press OW (2015) Randomized Phase II Trial Comparing Obinutuzumab (GA101) With Rituximab in Patients With Relapsed CD20 + Indolent B-Cell Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma: Final Analysis of the GAUSS Study. *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 33:3467-3474
- Semenza GL (2016) The hypoxic tumor microenvironment: A driving force for breast cancer progression. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Molecular Cell Research* 1863:382-391
- Sever R, Brugge JS (2015) Signal Transduction in Cancer. *Cold Spring Harbor Perspectives in Medicine* 5:a006098-a006098
- Shaffer BC, Le Luduec J-B, Forlenza C, Jakubowski AA, Perales M-A, Young JW, Hsu KC (2016) Phase II Study of Haploidentical Natural Killer Cell Infusion for Treatment of Relapsed or Persistent Myeloid Malignancies Following Allogeneic Hematopoietic Cell Transplantation. *Biology of Blood and Marrow Transplantation* 22:705-709

- Sharma R, Das A. (2018). IL-2 mediates NK cell proliferation but not hyperactivity. *Immunologic Research* 66(1):151-157
- Shi FD, Ljunggren H-G, La Cava A, Van Kaer L (2011) Organ-specific features of natural killer cells. *Nature Reviews Immunology* 11:658
- Shibuya K, Shirakawa J, Kameyama T, Honda S-i, Tahara-Hanaoka S, Miyamoto A, Onodera M, Sumida T, Nakauchi H, Miyoshi H (2003) CD226 (DNAM-1) is involved in lymphocyte function–associated antigen 1 costimulatory signal for naive T cell differentiation and proliferation. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 198:1829-1839
- Shortt J, Hsu A, Johnstone R (2013) Thalidomide-analogue biology: immunological, molecular and epigenetic targets in cancer therapy. *Oncogene* 32:4191
- Shvedova AA, Kisin ER, Yanamala N, Tkach AV, Gutkin DW, Star A, Shurin GV, Kagan VE, Shurin MR (2015) MDSC and TGF Are Required for Facilitation of Tumor Growth in the Lungs of Mice Exposed to Carbon Nanotubes. *Cancer research* 75:1615-1623
- Siegler U, Meyer-Monard S, Jörger S, Stern M, Tichelli A, Gratwohl A, Wodnar-Filipowicz A, Kalberer CP (2010) Good manufacturing practice-compliant cell sorting and large-scale expansion of single KIR-positive alloreactive human natural killer cells for multiple infusions to leukemia patients. *Cytotherapy* 12:750-763
- Silver ET, Gong D-E, Chang CS, Amrani A, Santamaria P, Kane KP (2000) Ly-49P Activates NK-Mediated Lysis by Recognizing H-2Dd 1. *The Journal of Immunology* 165:1771-1781
- Silver ET, Gong D-E, Hazes B, Kane KP (2001) Ly-49W, an activating receptor of nonobese diabetic mice with close homology to the inhibitory receptor Ly-49G, recognizes H-2Dk and H-2Dd. *The Journal of Immunology* 166:2333-2341

## *References*

---

- Simonetta F, Pradier A, Bosshard C, Masouridi-Levrat S, Chalandon Y, Roosnek E (2015) NK cell functional impairment after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation is associated with reduced levels of T-bet and eomesodermin. *The Journal of Immunology* 195:4712-4720
- Sivori S, Pende D, Bottino C, Marcenaro E, Pessino A, Biassoni R, Moretta L, Moretta A (1999) NKp46 is the major triggering receptor involved in the natural cytotoxicity of fresh or cultured human NK cells. Correlation between surface density of NKp46 and natural cytotoxicity against autologous, allogeneic or xenogeneic target cells. *European journal of immunology* 29:1656-1666
- Smith HRC, Heusel JW, Mehta IK, Kim S, Dorner BG, Naidenko OV, Iizuka K, Furukawa H, Beckman DL, Pingel JT, Scalzo AA, Fremont DH, Yokoyama WM (2002) Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 99:8826-8831
- Smith KM, Wu J, Bakker ABH, Phillips JH, Lanier LL (1998) Cutting Edge: Ly-49D and Ly-49H Associate with Mouse DAP12 and Form Activating Receptors. *The Journal of Immunology* 161:7-10
- Smyth MJ, Thia KY, Street SE, MacGregor D, Godfrey DI, Trapani JA (2000) Perforin-mediated cytotoxicity is critical for surveillance of spontaneous lymphoma. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 192:755-760
- Snyder GA, Brooks AG, Sun PD (1999) Crystal structure of the HLA-Cw3 allotype-specific killer cell inhibitory receptor KIR2DL2. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 96:3864-3869
- Song L, Asgharzadeh S, Salo J, Engell K, Wu H-w, Sposto R, Ara T, Silverman AM, DeClerck YA, Seeger RC, Metelitsa LS (2009) V $\alpha$ 24-invariant NKT cells mediate antitumor activity via killing of tumor-associated macrophages. *Journal of Clinical Investigation* 119:1524-1536

- Soriani A, Zingoni A, Cerboni C, Iannitto ML, Ricciardi MR, Di Gialleonardo V, Cippitelli M, Fionda C, Petrucci MT, Guarini A (2009) ATM-ATR–dependent up-regulation of DNAM-1 and NKG2D ligands on multiple myeloma cells by therapeutic agents results in enhanced NK-cell susceptibility and is associated with a senescent phenotype. *Blood* 113:3503-3511
- Specht HM, Ahrens N, Blankenstein C, Duell T, Fietkau R, Gaipl US, Günther C, Gunther S, Habl G, Hautmann H (2015) Heat shock protein 70 (Hsp70) peptide activated natural killer (NK) cells for the treatment of patients with non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) after radiochemotherapy (RCTx)–from preclinical studies to a clinical phase II trial. *Frontiers in Immunology* 6:162
- Stephen Tom L, Rutkowski Melanie R, Allegranza Michael J, Perales-Puchalt A, Tesone Amelia J, Svoronos N, Nguyen Jenny M, Sarmin F, Borowsky Mark E, Tchou J, Conejo-Garcia Jose R (2014) Transforming Growth Factor  $\beta$ -Mediated Suppression of Antitumor T Cells Requires FoxP1 Transcription Factor Expression. *Immunity* 41:427-439
- Stevanović S, Draper LM, Langan MM, Campbell TE, Kwong ML, Wunderlich JR, Dudley ME, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Kammula US, Restifo NP, Rosenberg SA, Hinrichs CS (2015) Complete Regression of Metastatic Cervical Cancer After Treatment With Human Papillomavirus–Targeted Tumor-Infiltrating T Cells. *Journal of Clinical Oncology* 33:1543-1550
- Street SE, Cretney E, Smyth MJ (2001) Perforin and interferon- $\gamma$  activities independently control tumor initiation, growth, and metastasis. *Blood* 97:192-197
- Suck G, Linn YC, Tonn T (2016) Natural Killer Cells for Therapy of Leukemia. *Transfusion Medicine and Hemotherapy* 43:89-95
- Suganuma M, Watanabe T, Yamaguchi K, Takahashi A, Fujiki H (2012) Human gastric cancer development with TNF- $\alpha$ -inducing protein secreted from *Helicobacter pylori*. *Cancer letters* 322:133-138

## *References*

---

- Sullivan LC, Clements CS, Beddoe T, Johnson D, Hoare HL, Lin J, Huyton T, Hopkins EJ, Reid HH, Wilce MC (2007) The heterodimeric assembly of the CD94-NKG2 receptor family and implications for human leukocyte antigen-E recognition. *Immunity* 27:900-911
- Sun C, Sun H, Zhang C, Tian Z (2015a) NK cell receptor imbalance and NK cell dysfunction in HBV infection and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cellular & molecular immunology* 12:292
- Sun C, Sun H-y, Xiao W-h, Zhang C, Tian Z (2015b) Natural killer cell dysfunction in hepatocellular carcinoma and NK cell-based immunotherapy. *Acta Pharmacologica Sinica* 36:1191-1199
- Sun JC, Beilke JN, Lanier LL (2009) Adaptive immune features of natural killer cells. *Nature* 457:557-561
- Sutlu T, Nyström S, Gilljam M, Stellan B, Applequist SE, Alici E (2012) Inhibition of Intracellular Antiviral Defense Mechanisms Augments Lentiviral Transduction of Human Natural Killer Cells: Implications for Gene Therapy. *Human Gene Therapy* 23:1090-1100
- Sutlu T, Stellan B, Gilljam M, Quezada HC, Nahi H, Gahrton G, Alici E (2010) Clinical-grade, large-scale, feeder-free expansion of highly active human natural killer cells for adoptive immunotherapy using an automated bioreactor. *Cytotherapy* 12:1044-1055
- Swann JB, Smyth MJ (2007) Immune surveillance of tumors. *Journal of Clinical Investigation* 117:1137-1146
- Thornthwaite J (1974a) The buoyant density distribution and plaque cytochrome assay for immunocompetent cells. Master's thesis, Florida State University
- Thornthwaite JT, Leif RC (1974b) The Plaque Cytochrome Assay: I. Light and Scanning Electron Microscopy of Immunocompetent Cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 113:1897-1908

- Tilburgs T, Crespo ÂC, van der Zwan A, Rybalov B, Raj T, Stranger B, Gardner L, Moffett A, Strominger JL (2015a) Human HLA-G+ extravillous trophoblasts: Immune-activating cells that interact with decidual leukocytes. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112:7219-7224
- Tilburgs T, Evans JH, Crespo ÂC, Strominger JL (2015b) The HLA-G cycle provides for both NK tolerance and immunity at the maternal–fetal interface. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 112:13312-13317
- Tong S, Liu G, Li M, Li X, Liu Q, Peng H, Li S, Ren H, Yin W (2017) Natural killer cell activation contributes to hepatitis B viral control in a mouse model. *Scientific reports* 7:314
- Tran Janco JM, Lamichhane P, Karyampudi L, Knutson KL (2015) Tumor-Infiltrating Dendritic Cells in Cancer Pathogenesis. *The Journal of Immunology* 194:2985-2991
- Vacca P, Cantoni C, Prato C, Fulcheri E, Moretta A, Moretta L, Mingari MC (2008) Regulatory role of NKp44, NKp46, DNAM-1 and NKG2D receptors in the interaction between NK cells and trophoblast cells. Evidence for divergent functional profiles of decidual versus peripheral NK cells. *International immunology* 20:1395-1405
- Vaidya SV, Stepp SE, McNerney ME, Lee J-K, Bennett M, Lee K-M, Stewart CL, Kumar V, Mathew PA (2005) Targeted disruption of the 2B4 gene in mice reveals an in vivo role of 2B4 (CD244) in the rejection of B16 melanoma cells. *The Journal of Immunology* 174:800-807
- Van den Broek ME (1996) Decreased tumor surveillance in perforin-deficient mice. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 184:1781-1790
- Van der Slik A, Alizadeh B, Koeleman B, Roep B, Giphart M (2007) Modelling KIR–HLA genotype disparities in type 1 diabetes. *HLA* 69:101-105



## *References*

---

- Veluchamy JP, Spanholtz J, Tordoier M, Thijssen VL, Heideman DAM, Verheul HMW, de Gruijl TD, van der Vliet HJ (2016) Combination of NK Cells and Cetuximab to Enhance Anti-Tumor Responses in RAS Mutant Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *PloS one* 11:e0157830
- Venkatasubramanian S, Cheekatla S, Paidipally P, Tripathi D, Welch E, Tvinnereim AR, Nurieva R, Vankayalapati R (2017) IL-21-dependent expansion of memory-like NK cells enhances protective immune responses against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Mucosal Immunology* 10:1031-1042
- Vidal SM, Khakoo SI, Biron CA (2011) Natural killer cell responses during viral infections: flexibility and conditioning of innate immunity by experience. *Current Opinion in Virology* 1:497-512
- Vitale M, Cantoni C, Pietra G, Mingari MC, Moretta L (2014) Effect of tumor cells and tumor microenvironment on NK-cell function: Highlights. *European journal of immunology* 44:1582-1592
- Vivier E (2004) Natural Killer Cell Signaling Pathways. *Science* 306:1517-1519
- Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, Caligiuri MA, Zitvogel L, Lanier LL, Yokoyama WM, Ugolini S (2011) Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. *Science* 331:44-49
- Vossen MT, Matmati M, Hertoghs KM, Baars PA, Gent M-R, Leclercq G, Hamann J, Kuijpers TW, van Lier RA (2008) CD27 defines phenotypically and functionally different human NK cell subsets. *The Journal of Immunology* 180:3739-3745
- Wallace AE, Host AJ, Whitley GS, Cartwright JE (2013) Decidual natural killer cell interactions with trophoblasts are impaired in pregnancies at increased risk of preeclampsia. *The American journal of pathology* 183:1853-1861
- Wang D, DuBois RN (2016) The Role of Prostaglandin E 2 in Tumor-Associated Immunosuppression. *Trends in Molecular Medicine* 22:1-3

- Wang D, Zhang B, Gao H, Ding G, Wu Q, Zhang J, Liao L, Chen H (2014) Clinical research of genetically modified dendritic cells in combination with cytokine-induced killer cell treatment in advanced renal cancer. *BMC cancer* 14:251
- Wang J, Shiratori I, Satoh T, Lanier LL, Arase H (2008) An essential role of sialylated O-linked sugar chains in the recognition of mouse CD99 by paired Ig-like type 2 receptor (PILR). *The Journal of Immunology* 180:1686-1693
- Wang M, Zhao J, Zhang L, Wei F, Lian Y, Wu Y, Gong Z, Zhang S, Zhou J, Cao K, Li X, Xiong W, Li G, Zeng Z, Guo C (2017) Role of tumor microenvironment in tumorigenesis. *Journal of Cancer* 8:761-773
- Wang R, Jaw JJ, Stutzman NC, Zou Z, Sun PD (2012) Natural killer cell-produced IFN- $\gamma$  and TNF- $\alpha$  induce target cell cytolysis through up-regulation of ICAM-1. *Journal of Leukocyte Biology* 91:299-309
- Wang W, Erbe AK, Hank JA, Morris ZS, Sondel PM (2015) NK Cell-Mediated Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Frontiers in immunology* 6:368
- Wang Z, Li B, Ren Y, Ye Z (2016) T-Cell-Based Immunotherapy for Osteosarcoma: Challenges and Opportunities. *Frontiers in Immunology* 7:353
- Warren HS, Altin JG, Waldron JC, Kinnear BF, Parish CR (1996) A carbohydrate structure associated with CD15 (Lewis x) on myeloid cells is a novel ligand for human CD2. *The Journal of Immunology* 156:2866-2873
- Warren HS, Jones AL, Freeman C, Bettadapura J, Parish CR (2005) Evidence That the Cellular Ligand for the Human NK Cell Activation Receptor NKp30 Is Not a Heparan Sulfate Glycosaminoglycan. *The Journal of Immunology* 175:207-212
- Warren HS, Smyth MJ (1999) NK cells and apoptosis. *Immunology and cell biology* 77:64-75
- Watzl C, Long EO (2010) Signal Transduction During Activation and Inhibition of Natural Killer Cells. In: Coligan JE, Bierer BE, Margulies DH, Shevach EM, Strober W (eds) *Current Protocols in Immunology*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ, USA

## References

---

- Whiteside TL (2008) The tumor microenvironment and its role in promoting tumor growth. *Oncogene* 27:5904-5912
- Wierda WG, Padmanabhan S, Chan GW, Gupta IV, Lisby S, Osterborg A, Investigators ftH-C-S (2011) Ofatumumab is active in patients with fludarabine-refractory CLL irrespective of prior rituximab: results from the phase 2 international study. *Blood* 118:5126-5129
- Wiernik A, Foley B, Zhang B, Verneris MR, Warlick E, Gleason MK, Ross JA, Luo X, Weisdorf DJ, Walcheck B, Vallera DA, Miller JS (2013) Targeting Natural Killer Cells to Acute Myeloid Leukemia In Vitro with a CD16 x 33 Bispecific Killer Cell Engager and ADAM17 Inhibition. *Clinical Cancer Research* 19:3844-3855
- Xiao C, Beitler JJ, Higgins KA, Conneely K, Dwivedi B, Felger J, Wommack EC, Shin DM, Saba NF, Ong LY, Kowalski J, Bruner DW, Miller AH (2016) Fatigue is associated with inflammation in patients with head and neck cancer before and after intensity-modulated radiation therapy. *Brain, behavior, and immunity* 52:145-152
- Yamaguchi R, Tanaka M, Yano A, Gary MT, Yamaguchi M, Koura K, Kanomata N, Kawaguchi A, Akiba J, Naito Y (2012) Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes are important pathologic predictors for neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with breast cancer. *Human pathology* 43:1688-1694
- Yang L, Ren B, Li H, Yu J, Cao S, Hao X, Ren X (2013) Enhanced antitumor effects of DC-activated CIKs to chemotherapy treatment in a single cohort of advanced non-small-cell lung cancer patients. *Cancer immunology, immunotherapy* 62:65-73
- Yang Q, Hokland ME, Bryant JL, Zhang Y, Nannmark U, Watkins SC, Goldfarb RH, Herberman RB, Basse PH (2003) Tumor-localization by adoptively transferred, interleukin-2-activated NK cells leads to destruction of well-established lung metastases. *International journal of cancer* 105:512-519

- Yang Y, Lim O, Kim TM, Ahn Y-O, Choi H, Chung H, Min B, Her JH, Cho SY, Keam B, Lee S-H, Kim D-W, Hwang YK, Heo DS (2016) Phase I Study of Random Healthy Donor-Derived Allogeneic Natural Killer Cell Therapy in Patients with Malignant Lymphoma or Advanced Solid Tumors. *Cancer Immunology Research* 4:215-224
- Yi Y, He H-W, Wang J-X, Cai X-Y, Li Y-W, Zhou J, Cheng Y-F, Jin J-J, Fan J, Qiu S-J (2013) The functional impairment of HCC-infiltrating  $\gamma\delta$  T cells, partially mediated by regulatory T cells in a TGF $\beta$ -and IL-10-dependent manner. *Journal of hepatology* 58:977-983
- Yokota M, Fukui A, Funamizu A, Nakamura R, Kamoi M, Fuchinoue K, Sasaki Y, Fukuhara R, Mizunuma H (2013) Role of NKp46 expression in cytokine production by CD56-positive NK cells in the peripheral blood and the uterine endometrium. *American journal of reproductive immunology* 69:202-211
- Yoon JC, Lim J-B, Park JH, Lee JM (2011) Cell-to-cell contact with hepatitis C virus-infected cells reduces functional capacity of natural killer cells. *Journal of Virology* 85:12557-12569
- Yuan X-L, Chen L, Li M-X, Dong P, Xue J, Wang J, Zhang T-t, Wang X-a, Zhang F-M, Ge H-L (2010) Elevated expression of Foxp3 in tumor-infiltrating Treg cells suppresses T-cell proliferation and contributes to gastric cancer progression in a COX-2-dependent manner. *Clinical immunology* 134:277-288
- Yun CH, Lundgren A, Azem J, Sjöling Å, Holmgren J, Svennerholm A-M, Lundin BS (2005) Natural killer cells and *Helicobacter pylori* infection: bacterial antigens and interleukin-12 act synergistically to induce gamma interferon production. *Infection and Immunity* 73:1482-1490
- Zamai L, Ahmad M, Bennett IM, Azzoni L, Alnemri ES, Perussia B (1998) Natural killer (NK) cell-mediated cytotoxicity: differential use of TRAIL and Fas ligand by immature and mature primary human NK cells. *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 188:2375-2380

## *References*

---

- Zelenay S, Reis e Sousa C (2016) Reducing prostaglandin E 2 production to raise cancer immunogenicity. *OncoImmunology* 5:e1123370
- Zhang Y, Wang H, Lou X, Qu X, Gao L, Liu X, Li M, Guo H, Jiang Y (2017) Decreased percentage of NKG2D+ NK cells in patients with incident onset of Type 1 Diabetes. *Clinical and Experimental Pharmacology and Physiology* 44:180-190
- Zhao H, Zhang J-X (2017) Natural killer cells: the first defense against human papilloma virus early infection. *Journal of Public Health and Emergency* 1:5-5
- Zhao X, Rong L, Zhao X, Li X, Liu X, Deng J, Wu H, Xu X, Erben U, Wu P, Syrbe U, Sieper J, Qin Z (2012) TNF signaling drives myeloid-derived suppressor cell accumulation. *Journal of Clinical Investigation* 122:4094-4104
- Zheng M, Sun R, Wei H, Tian Z (2016) NK Cells Help Induce Anti-Hepatitis B Virus CD8 + T Cell Immunity in Mice. *The Journal of Immunology* 196:4122-4131
- Zhu Y, Huang B, Shi J (2016) Fas ligand and lytic granule differentially control cytotoxic dynamics of natural killer cell against cancer target. *Oncotarget* 7:47163
- Ziani L, Safta-Saadoun TB, Gourbeix J, Cavalcanti A, Robert C, Favre G, Chouaib S, Thiery J (2017) Melanoma-associated fibroblasts decrease tumor cell susceptibility to NK cell-mediated killing through matrix-metalloproteinases secretion. *Oncotarget* 8 (12); 19780-19794

## *Publications*

---



# IL-2 mediates NK cell proliferation but not hyperactivity

Richa Sharma<sup>1</sup> · Asmita Das<sup>1</sup>

© Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, part of Springer Nature 2017

## Abstract

Natural killer cells play a major role in innate immunity against tumor and virus-infected cells. NK cells express activating and inhibitory receptors to regulate their function. It has been established that modulation in the NK cell receptor profile results in altered function of NK cell against target cells. Here, we study the effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell inhibitory receptors Ly49A, Ly49C, and activating receptor Ly49D in C57BL/6 mice. It was observed that there was significant increase in expression of Ly49A but no change in expression of Ly49C and Ly49D on IL-2 stimulation. We further noticed that although IL-2 stimulation increased the NK cell population and expression of activation marker NK1.1 but IL-2 stimulation does not cause hyper-responsiveness in NK cells, as there was no increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production in IL-2 stimulated NK cells as compared to unstimulated controls. These findings provide a framework to understand the effect of IL-2 stimulation on cognate and non-cognate receptor ligand interactions and suggest strategies for immunotherapies in conjunction with IL-2 combinatorial therapies.

**Keywords** NK cells · IL-2 · NK cell receptors · Ly49A · Ly49C · Ly49D · NK1.1

## Introduction

Natural killer (NK) cells are lymphocytes of the innate immune system. They are cytokine producing and have cytotoxic ability to kill both virus-infected cells and tumor cells. It has been established that NK cells have the ability to recognize and kill tumor cells without any prior antigen exposure. So, NK cells are considered as promising agents for cell-based cancer therapies. However, NK cells represent only a minor fraction of the human lymphocyte population. Their skewed phenotype and altered functionality during tumor progression necessitate the expansion and activation of sufficient numbers of functional NK cells to develop possible therapies against tumor [1]. It is now well known that IL-2 affects many types of cells in the immune system including T cells, B cells, and NK cells. IL-2 has been reported to be the first cytokine to be injected to patients diagnosed with metastatic melanoma [2]. IL-2 is known to be crucial for antigen specific T cell response

as well as non-specific T cell activation [3] and has been used as monotherapy for several different cancer types [4].

The presence of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) within the tumor microenvironment has been considered as symbolic of an ongoing immune response toward the tumor. Many studies have shown that intense infiltration of lymphocytes can be correlated with tumor remission [5, 6]. Adoptive T cell therapy (ACT) using tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes has proved to be one of the main treatment modalities within cancer immunotherapy, in which lymphocytes mostly; T cells are removed from tumor samples and propagated in vitro on IL-2 stimulation. Then the lymphocytes are infused into cancer patients with the goal of recognizing, targeting, and destroying tumor cells. Immunotherapy using tumor-specific T cells was first established by Steven Rosenberg in 1980s, and eventually human trials of ex vivo expanded TILs have shown promising results when combined with systemic high-dose interleukin-2 (IL-2) in patients with metastatic melanoma [7]. Hwang et al. observed during the meta-analysis study among ovarian cancer patients that the absence of intraepithelial TILs in patients lead to poor survival [8]. Also, infusion of HPV-TILs from human papilloma virus (HPV) positive patients into cervical cancer patients resulted in cancer regression [9]. Moreover, like T cells, infiltrating NK cells have capacity to cope with the tumor outgrowth. Schleypen and colleagues separated

✉ Asmita Das  
asmita1710@gmail.com; asmitadas1710@dce.ac.in

<sup>1</sup> Department of Biotechnology, Delhi Technological University, Main Bawana Road, Shahbad Daultapur, New Delhi, Delhi 110042, India

tumors in two groups based on frequency of infiltrating NK cells in tissues with low NK-TIL and high NK-TIL isolated from renal cell carcinomas and observed that high NK-TIL showed more cytolytic potential against K562 target cells on low-dose IL-2 stimulation [10]. Also, It was reported that on high doses of IL-2 administration at regular short intervals, significantly more activated NK (A-NK) cells were accumulated in the tumors and were able to eliminate well-established lung metastases in C57BL/6 mice [11, 12]. Sarkar and his co-workers have shown that activation of NK cells with IL-2 lead to restoration of NK cells cytotoxicity even under hypoxic conditions in multiple myeloma [13]. Although various T cell and NK cell based immunotherapies have shown impressive clinical success in the treatment of different cancers but have certain limitations due to several obstacles including reduced effector cell function following infiltration into tumor [14, 15].

It has been suggested that an imbalance between the number and activation status of tumor-infiltrating effector cells may be responsible for resistance of solid tumors to adoptive T cell therapy [16]. TILs hypofunction has been co-related with upregulation of surface inhibitory receptors [14]. Tahtinen et al. analyzed that IL-2 administration could modulate the tumor microenvironment and reduce the tumor resistance to cytotoxic CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells within the tumor by down-regulating the expression of CTLA-4 and PD-1 markers on CD8<sup>+</sup> T cells [17]. Similarly, infiltrating NK cells isolated directly from renal cell carcinomas showed over-expression of inhibitory receptor NKG2A/CD94 compared to autologous peripheral blood mononuclear cells [18]. Therefore, tumor microenvironment seems to be responsible for altered expression of receptors and MHC represented by tumor cells may act as ligands for inhibitory receptors.

Like T lymphocytes, NK cells should not recognize autologous cells as self cell is equipped either with strong expression of HLA-I antigens able to deliver inhibiting signals to NK cells or weak expression of surface ligands required for triggering NK cell activation. It is becoming evident that NK cells can recognize self cells which display ligands for activating receptors. Several evidences have been reported on the upregulation of the NKG2D ligand MHC class I-related chain A (MICA) in response to infection. In addition, the poliovirus receptor (PVR) or nectin-2, expressed on HIV-infected CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells resulted in NK cell recognition through the DNAM1-activating receptor favoring the NK-mediated self aggression [19]. Recently, many studies have documented the upregulation of NK-activating receptors in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis (MS), systemic, psoriasis lupus erythematosus (SLE), and latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) [20–23].

Several reports have also shown an association between NK cell deficits and autoimmune disorders. Similarly, a significantly low percentage of NK cells was observed in LADA patients and Type I diabetes as compared to healthy controls

[23, 24]. The above studies suggest that the correlation of decreased NK cell numbers and/or function with autoimmune diseases raises the possibility that autoimmunity may arise from NK cell deficiencies.

One way to overcome the tumor resistance is adequate expansion of cytotoxic effector cells with immunomodulatory cytokine such as IL-2 to ensure efficient lysis of tumor targets. Inappropriate killing of self cells reflect a loss of NK cell tolerance in particular tissue due to downregulation of inhibitory receptors. Thus, identifying the modifications of NK cells with respect to NK cell density and receptor expression will help to optimize the efficiency of NK cells in current therapies. In the current study, we investigated the effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK cell population and NK cell receptors, NK1.1, Ly49D-activating receptors, and Ly49A and Ly49C expressions in mice model.

## Materials and methods

### Reagents

RPMI 1640, RBC lysis buffer (0.15 M Ammonium chloride, 1 mM Potassium bicarbonate, 0.1 mM disodium EDTA), penicillin, streptomycin, and nystatin were obtained from sigma Aldrich; Fetal bovine serum (FBS) was purchased from Gibco, Thermo Fisher Scientific. Phosphate-buffer saline (PBS) was procured from Himedia Laboratory Pvt. Ltd., Mumbai, India.

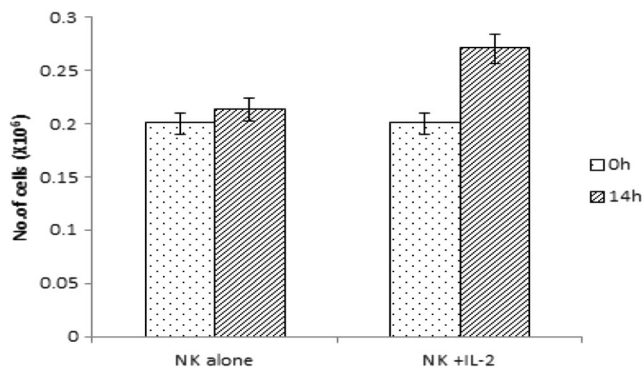
### NK cell preparation

Spleens were removed aseptically from C57BL/6 mice, and a single-cell suspension was prepared in RPMI1640 supplemented with heat inactivated 10% FBS, penicillin, streptomycin, and nystatin. Erythrocytes were lysed by using RBC lysis buffer, and NK cells were isolated from these splenocytes through EasySep™ Mouse NK Cell Enrichment Kit through negative selection. Cells were stimulated with 100 U of human recombinant IL-2 and incubated overnight at at 37 °C in an atmosphere of 5% CO<sub>2</sub>, unstimulated cells were kept as control. NK cell viability was evaluated by trypan blue exclusion method and was counted with hemocytometer after incubation.

### Staining and flow cytometry

IL-2 stimulated and unstimulated NK cells were adjusted to the concentration of 0.5 X10<sup>6</sup> cells per milliliter. The antibodies anti-Ly49A and anti-Ly49C conjugated with PE and anti-Ly49D and anti-NK1.1 conjugated with FITC were purchased from BD pharmingen. After mAb staining for 30 min, cells were washed with and re-suspended in ice-cold PBS buffer.





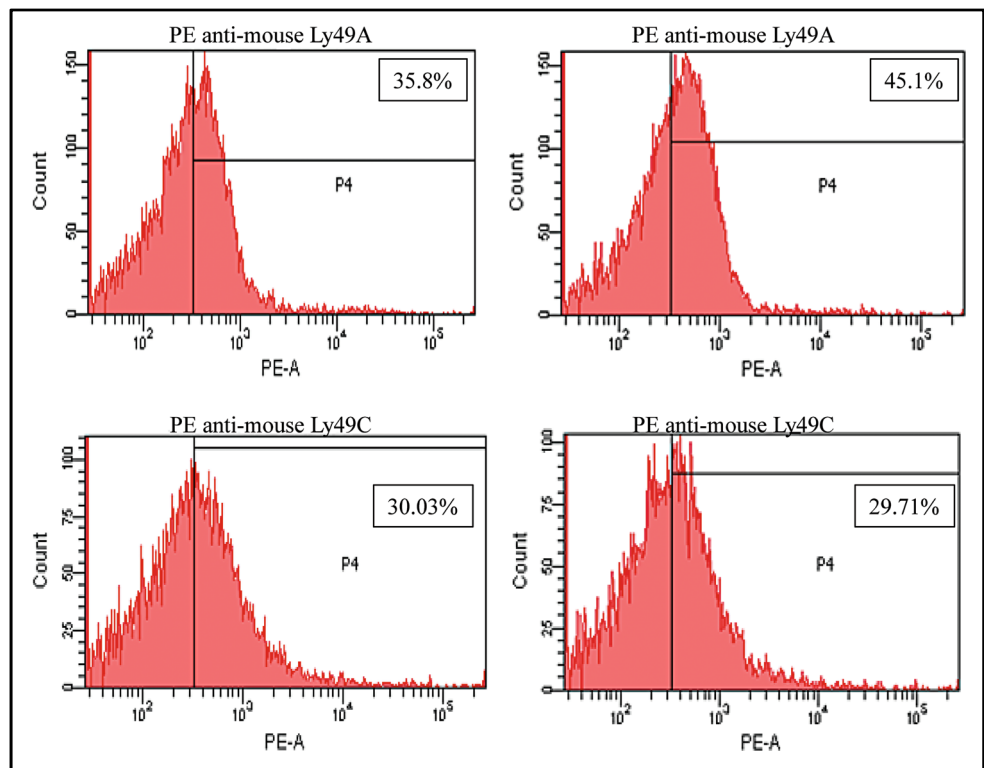
**Fig. 1** Viable NK cell count at 0 and 14 h incubation in absence (NK alone) and presence (NK + IL2) of IL-2

All flow-cytometry data were acquired using FACS LSR flow cytometer (BD Biosciences).

**Cytokine secretion measurement**

Purified NK cells (0.5 X10<sup>6</sup>) were washed and incubated for the indicated time at 37 °C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> in absence and presence of IL-2. Also, NK cells were mixed with NK cell targets YAC-1 (4:1 ratio) as positive control. Thereafter, supernatants were collected. The concentrations of cytokines were quantified using DuoSet ELISA kit. To address the kinetics of secretion of cytokines, MIP-1α and IFN-γ were mixed according to the manufacturer’s instructions (R&D Systems).

**Fig. 2** Charaterization of NK cells inhibitory receptors on stimulation with IL-2. The upper panels describe the expression of Ly49A (PE anti-mouse Ly49A), (lower panels) depicts the expression of NK cell inhibitory receptor Ly49C (PE anti-mouse Ly49C) on purified NK cells in absence (left panels) and presence of IL-2 (right panels)



**Statistical analysis**

Statistical analysis of comparisons between NK alone and NK + IL-2 was performed with using 2-way analysis of variance followed by bon ferroni test. *P* value *p* < 0.05 was considered significant vs respective controls. All experiments were repeated at least three times, and data obtained were expressed as mean ± SD.

**Results**

**Expansion of NK cells with IL-2 stimulation**

Purified NK cells were stimulated with IL2 (100 U), and NK cell viability was evaluated by trypan blue exclusion method, and cells were counted by hemocytometer on overnight incubation at 37 °C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. A definitive increase in NK cell population was observed upon IL2 stimulation in comparison to uninduced controls (Fig. 1).

**Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell inhibitory receptor profile**

NK cells are known to be responsive to IL-2 and in tumor microenvironment in situ; tumor infiltrating lymphocyte stimulation would lead to IL-2 secretion by T cells, and hence, we wanted to study the effect of IL-2 stimulation on NK receptor expression. Since, IL-2 stimulation resulted in proliferation of population of NK cells (Fig. 1), we wanted to explore the

**Table 1** Percentage of activating and inhibitory receptors expressing NK cells in absence (NK alone) and presence (NK + IL-2) of IL-2

NK receptor	NK alone	NK + IL-2
Ly49A	35.8	45.1
Ly49C	30.03	29.71
Ly49D	32	32.6
NK1.1	10.9	30.2

\*Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of three independent experiments

effect of IL-2 stimulation on the expression level of inhibitory as well as activating receptors. Effect of IL-2 stimulation was studied on inhibitory NK cell receptors, Ly49A and Ly49C, (Fig. 2). It was observed that the expression of inhibitory receptor Ly49A increased upon stimulation with IL-2 ( $P$  value  $< 0.05$ ) while there was no alteration in inhibitory receptor Ly49C expression (Table 1). It may be noted that C57BL/6 mice used in this study have MHC haplotype H2b. Ly49A is the cognate inhibitory receptor for H2k and H2d. While Ly49C is the cognate receptor for H2b, the NK harvested from C57BL/6 mice has H2b background, and hence, our results show that IL-2-induced stimulation of inhibitory receptor expression is more on non-cognate inhibitory receptor.

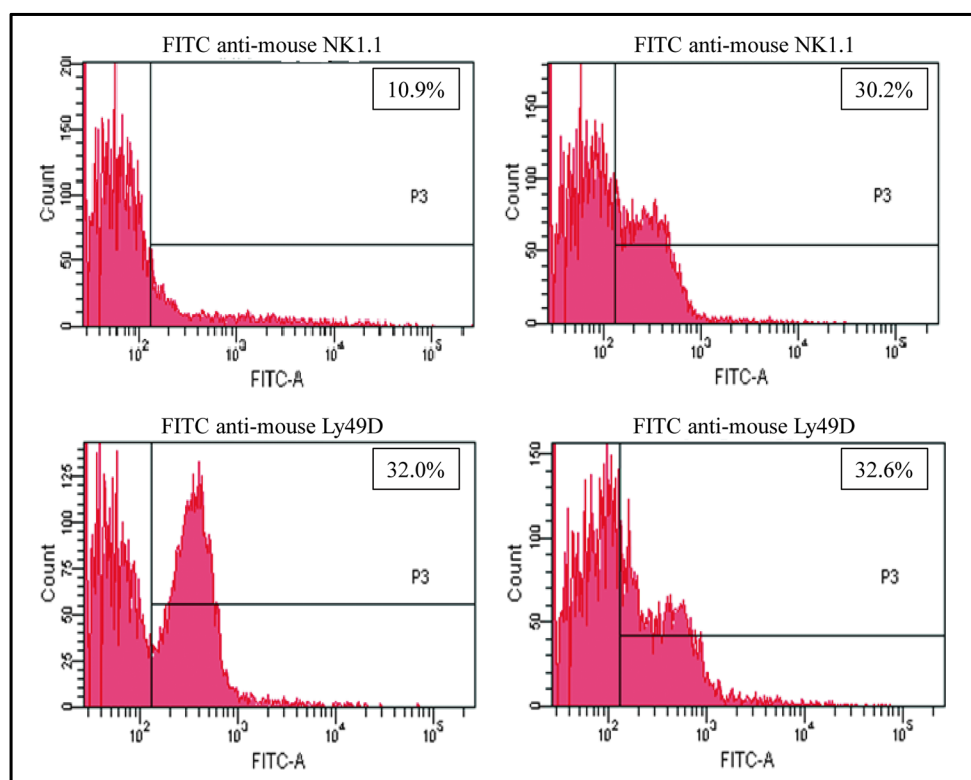
### Effect of IL-2 stimulation of NK cells on NK cell-activating receptor profile

Role of IL-2-induced NK cell proliferation was studied in the context of expression level of activating receptors on NK cells.

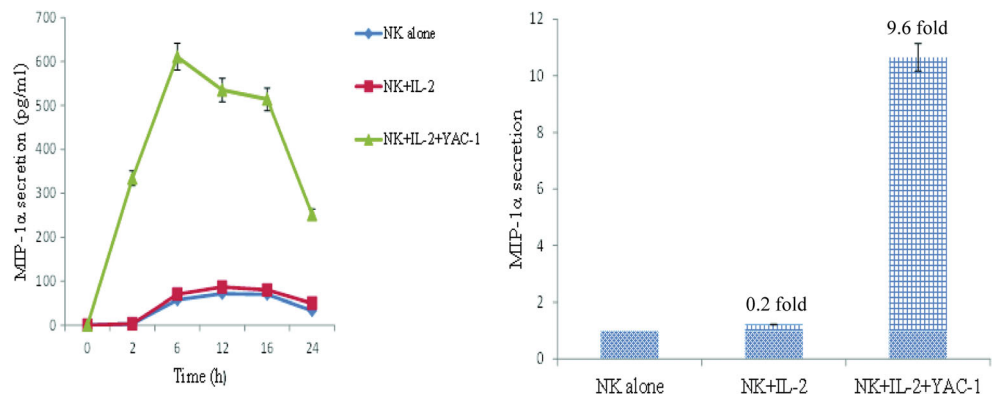
We noticed the significant increase in expression level of NK1.1 (Fig. 3). Ly49D, which acts as an activating receptor due to the DAP-10 and DAP-12-mediated activation, has shown to be effective in enhancing cytolytic effector function and memory differentiation of NK cells in context of CMV infection [25]. Hence, expression level of Ly49D was studied upon IL-2 stimulation. Figure 3 shows that there is no significant change in Ly49D expression on per cell basis upon IL-2 stimulation. We hypothesize that this is a significant strategy employed by the immune system to ensure that proliferative stimulation of NK cells does not result in hyper-responsiveness of NK cells. In the context of any infection and stimulation of T cells, there would be a local increase in levels of IL-2; however, although this would result in significant expansion in the number of functional NK, such NK cells are not hyperactive or potentially deleterious to self cells.

We further showed that although IL-2 stimulation resulted in significant increase in NK population and increase in expression of NK activation marker NK1.1 as shown in Figs. 1 and 3, this did not result in hyperactivity of the NK cells. Figures 4 and 5 show that there is no appreciable increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production by the NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation. Incubation of NK cells with IL-2 resulted in only 0.2-fold increase in secretion of MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  (Figs. 4 and 5) in comparison to NK cells alone. Thus, NK cells expressing Ly49D in C57BL/6 mice do not mount effective response and provide tolerance in normal conditions. However, these IL-2 expanded NK cells are not inactivated and in the presence of susceptible tumor cells (YAC-1) can

**Fig. 3** Characterization of NK cells activating receptors on stimulation with IL-2. The upper panels describe the expression of NK cell-activating receptor NK1.1 (FITC anti-mouse NK1.1) and lower panels describe the expression of Ly49D (FITC anti-mouse Ly49D) on purified NK cells in absence (left panels) and presence of IL-2 (right panels)



**Fig. 4** Kinetics and profile of MIP-1 $\alpha$  secretion on IL-2 stimulation. NK cells were incubated alone or with IL-2 or with YAC-1 cells as positive control at 37 °C. Supernatants were harvested at different time points and as indicated, MIP-1 $\alpha$  secretion was determined by using ELISA kit. Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of three independent experiments



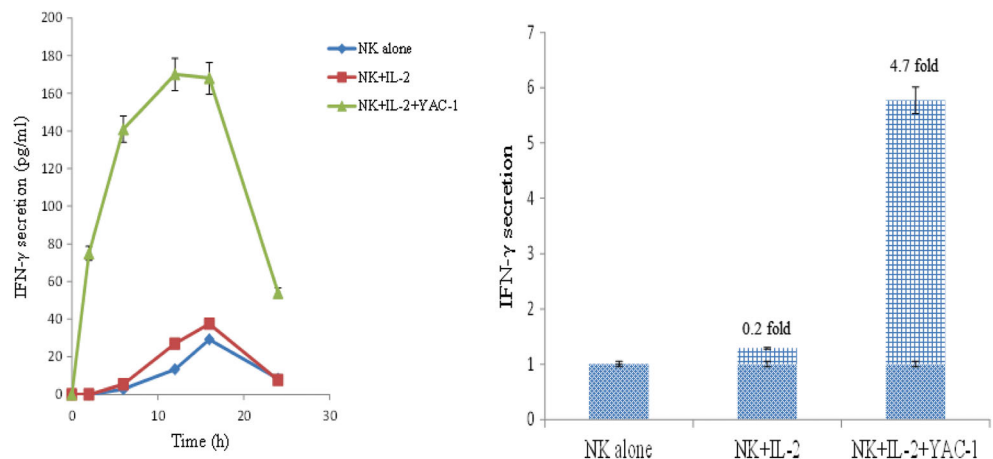
potentially mount a very robust response in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production in Figs. 4 and 5.

### Discussion

Murine NK cells are best determined by the expression of surface marker NK1.1 and considered a hallmark of NK cell function. In our present study, we noticed that the stimulation of IL-2 resulted in enhanced proliferation of NK cells and expression of NK1.1 activation marker on overnight incubation. This provides insights toward increasing cytotoxic potential of NK cells on IL-2 stimulation. Previously, studies have shown that NK cells stimulated with anti-NK1.1 and IL-2 had increased cytolytic activity against NK sensitive tumor target, YAC-1 [26]. IL-2 stimulation also resulted in restoration of degranulation and cytokine producing ability of NK cells against tumor in Wiscott Aldrich syndrome patients [27]. Hence, we explored the possibility that IL-2 stimulation of NK cells itself might result in potentiation of NK activity. We therefore determined the expression of activating receptor Ly49D on NK cells upon IL-2 stimulation. There was no significant increase in expression of Ly49D on IL-2-stimulated NK cells as compared to NK cells alone. Thus, IL-2 causes increase in NK cell population but does not cause upregulation of activation receptor expression.

Ly49 receptors are type II C-type lectin-like membrane receptors coded by a family of highly polymorphic and polygenic genes. The inhibitory Ly49 receptors are involved in NK cell education; a process in which NK cells acquire function and tolerance toward cells that express “self-MHC-I.” Ly49A inhibitory receptor binds to H-2D<sup>d</sup> and H-2D<sup>k</sup> antigens bearing target cells and Ly49C recognizes H-2<sup>b</sup> H-2k<sup>d</sup>, H-2k<sup>b</sup>, and H-2D<sup>d</sup> antigens. Thus, Ly-49A and Ly-49C differ in both their pattern of expression by NK cell subsets, as well as their specificities for class I molecules and for C57BL/6 mice which have H2b background, Ly49C is the cognate-inhibitory receptor. In our study, we did not observe any significant increase on Ly49C expression on IL-2 stimulation on per cell basis. This raises the possibility to eliminate hyporesponsiveness by effector cells. We observed significant increase in expression of non-cognate ligand Ly49A on IL-2 stimulation. Probably this is to ensure further no cross-reactive activation in the high IL-2 milieu of tumor microenvironment. Thus, preventing autoimmune reaction and may predict the way of decreasing the NK cytotoxic potential through non-cognate cross-reactive receptor. There are also reports of downregulation of Ly49C and Ly49A expression on T cell and NK cell on interaction with their cognate ligands in Ly49C and Ly49A transgenic mice led to autoimmune inflammatory disorders [28, 29].

**Fig. 5** Kinetics and profile of IFN- $\gamma$  secretion on IL-2 stimulation. NK cells were incubated alone or with IL-2 or with YAC-1 cells as positive control at 37 °C. Supernatants were harvested at different time points and as indicated IFN- $\gamma$  secretion was determined by using ELISA kit. Values represent mean  $\pm$  SD of three independent experiments



Further, we showed that upon IL-2 stimulation there is no significant increase in MIP-1 $\alpha$  and IFN- $\gamma$  production. This increased level upon T cell activation will not result in concomitant increased hyperactivity of NK cells. However upon co-culturing of NK cells stimulated with IL-2 and tumor cells, there is a very significant and robust increase in NK activity (data not shown). Hence, we conclude that in tumor microenvironment where there is presence of tumor cells in context of high levels of IL-2, there is specific increase in activity of NK cells. However, in the absence of tumor cells, an inherently hyperactive NK population stimulated by IL-2 would have resulted in non-contextual autoimmunity. Hence, the hypo-responsiveness of the IL-2 induced expansion of NK population in a measure of extensive proliferation of potentially active NK cells but refrain from hyperactivity. Although such cells are expanded but are hypoactive upon encountering target cells like tumor cells can immediately cause significant increase in activity.

Our findings are particularly significant in designing strategies for designing strategies for immunotherapeutics in conjunction with IL-2 combinatorial therapies.

**Acknowledgements** We thank Dr. A.N Bhatt, Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Allied Sciences for providing us the mice model and instrument facility. Authors are thankful to DST-SERB for providing financial support for the present study. Authors would like to acknowledge DTU for providing research fellowship to Richa Sharma and also providing infrastructure facilities.

All experiments involving animals were performed in Institute of Nuclear Medicine and Allied Sciences. All procedures performed in studies involving animals were in accordance with the ethical standards of the institution or practice at which the studies were conducted.

## Compliance with ethical standards

**Conflict of interest** The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

## References

- Duck Cho MD, Dario Campana MD. Expansion and activation of natural killer cells for cancer immunotherapy. *Korean J Lab Med.* 2009;29(2):89–96.
- Atkins MB, Kunkel L, Sznol M, Rosenberg SA. High-dose recombinant interleukin-2 therapy in patients with metastatic melanoma: long-term survival update. *Cancer J Sci Am.* 2000;6(1):S11–4.
- Boyman O, Sprent J. The role of interleukin-2 during homeostasis and activation of the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol.* 2012;12(3):180–90. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nri3156>.
- Sim GC, Radvanyi L. The IL-2 cytokine family in cancer immunotherapy. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev.* 2014;25(4):377–90. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cytogfr.2014.07.018>.
- Ohtani H, Mori-Shiraishi K, Nakajima M, Ueki H. Defining lymphocyte-predominant breast cancer by the proportion of lymphocyte-rich stroma and its significance in routine histopathological diagnosis. *Pathol Int.* 2015;65(12):644–51. <https://doi.org/10.1111/pin.12355>.
- Dushyanthen S, Beavis PA, Savas P, Teo ZL, Zhou C, Mansour M, et al. Relevance of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in breast cancer. *BMC Med.* 2015;13(1):202. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12916-015-0431-3>.
- Rosenberg SA, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Kammula US, Hughes MS, Phan GQ, et al. Durable complete responses in heavily pretreated patients with metastatic melanoma using T-cell transfer immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res.* 2011;17(13):4550–7. <https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-0116>.
- Hwang WT, Adams SF, Tahirovic E, Hagemann IS, Coukos G. Prognostic significance of tumor-infiltrating T cells in ovarian cancer: a meta-analysis. *Gynecol Oncol.* 2012;124(2):192–8. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.09.039>.
- Stevanovic S, Draper LM, Langan MM, Campbell TE, Kwong ML, Wunderlich JR, et al. Complete regression of metastatic cervical cancer after treatment with human papillomavirus-targeted tumor-infiltrating T cells. *J Clin Oncol* 2015;33(14):1543–50.
- Schleypen JS, Baur N, Kammerer R, Nelson PJ, Rohrmann K, Grone EF, et al. Cytotoxic Markers and frequency predict functional capacity of natural killer cells infiltrating renal cell carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res.* 2006;12(3):718–25. <https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-0857>.
- Basse PH, Goldfarb RH, Herberman RB, Hokland ME. Accumulation of adoptively transferred ANK cells in murine metastases: kinetics and role of interleukin-2. *In Vivo Athens Greece* 1994;8(1):17–24.
- Yang Q, Hokland ME, Bryant JL, Zhang Y, Nannmark U, Watkins SC, et al. Tumor-localization by adoptively transferred, interleukin-2-activated NK cells leads to destruction of well-established lung metastases. *Int J Cancer.* 2003;105(4):512–9. <https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.11119>.
- Sarkar S, Germeraad WT, Rouschop KM, Steeghs EM, Van Gelder M, Bos GM, et al. Hypoxia induced impairment of NK cell cytotoxicity against multiple myeloma can be overcome by IL-2 activation of the NK cells. *PLoS One.* 2013;8(5):e64835. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0064835>.
- Moon EK, Wang LC, Dolfi DV, Wilson CB, Ranganathan R, Sun J, et al. Multifactorial T-cell hypofunction that is reversible can limit the efficacy of chimeric antigen receptor-transduced human T cells in solid tumors. *Clin Cancer Res.* 2014;20(16):4262–73. <https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2627>.
- Navarro AG, Björklund AT, Chekenya M. Therapeutic potential and challenges of natural killer cells in treatment of solid tumors. *Front Immunol.* 2015;6:202.
- Kunert A, Straetemans T, Govers C, Lamers C, Mathijssen R, Sleijfer S, et al. TCR-engineered T cells meet new challenges to treat solid tumors: choice of antigen, T cell fitness, and sensitization of tumor milieu. *Front Immunol.* 2013;4:363.
- Tahtinen S, Kaikkonen S, Merisalo-Soikkeli M, Grönberg-Vahakoskela S, Kanerva A, Parviainen S, et al. Favorable alteration of tumor microenvironment by immunomodulatory cytokines for efficient T-cell therapy in solid tumors. *PLoS One.* 2015;10(6):e0131242. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0131242>.
- Schleypen JS, Von Geldern M, Weiss EH, Kotzias N, Rohrmann K, Schendel DJ, et al. Renal cell carcinoma-infiltrating natural killer cells express differential repertoires of activating and inhibitory receptors and are inhibited by specific HLA class I allotypes. *Int J Cancer.* 2003;106(6):905–12. <https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.11321>.
- Bottino C, Castriconi R, Pende D, Rivera P, Nanni M, Camemolla B, et al. Identification of PVR (CD155) and Nectin-2 (CD112) as cell surface ligands for the human DNAM-1 (CD226) activating molecule. *J Exp Med.* 2003;198(4):557–67. <https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20030788>.
- Poggi A, Zocchi MRNK. Cell autoreactivity and autoimmune diseases. *Front Immunol.* 2014;5:27.

21. Schleinitz N, Vely F, Harle J-R, Vivier E. Natural killer cells in human autoimmune diseases. *Immunology*. 2010;131(4):451–8. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2567.2010.03360.x>.
22. Fogel LA, Yokoyama WM, French AR. Natural killer cells in human autoimmune disorders. *Arthritis Res Ther*. 2013;15(4):216. <https://doi.org/10.1186/ar4232>.
23. Akesson C, Uvebrant K, Oderup C, Lynch K, Harris RA, Lemmark A, et al. Altered natural killer (NK) cell frequency and phenotype in latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) prior to insulin deficiency. *Clin Exp Immunol*. 2010;161(1):48–56. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2249.2010.04114.x>.
24. Zhang Y, Wang H, Lou X, Qu X, Gao L, Liu X, et al. Decreased percentage of NKG2D+ NK cells in patients with incident onset of type 1 diabetes. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol*. 2017;44(2):180–90. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1440-1681.12699>.
25. Nabekura T, Lanier LL. Activating receptors for self-MHC class I enhance effector functions and memory differentiation of NK cells during mouse cytomegalovirus infection. *Immunity*. 2016;45(1):74–82. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2016.06.024>.
26. Reichlin A, Yokoyama WM. Natural killer cell proliferation induced by anti-NK1.1 and IL-2. *Immunol Cell Biol*. 1998;76(2):143–52. <https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1440-1711.1998.00726.x>.
27. Kritikou JS, Dahlberg CI, Baptista MA, Wagner AK, Banerjee PP, Gwalani LA, et al. IL-2 in the tumor microenvironment is necessary for Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein deficient NK cells to respond to tumors in vivo. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:30636.
28. Pauza M, Smith KM, Neal H, Reilly C, Lanier LL, Lo D. Transgenic expression of Ly-49A in thymocytes alters repertoire selection. *J Immunol*. 2000;164(2):884–92. <https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.164.2.884>.
29. Hanke T, Raulet DH. Cumulative inhibition of NK cells and T cells resulting from engagement of multiple inhibitory Ly49 receptors. *J Immunol*. 2001;166(5):3002–7. <https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.166.5.3002>.



# Organ-specific phenotypic and functional features of NK cells in humans

**Richa Sharma & Asmita Das**

**Immunologic Research**

ISSN 0257-277X

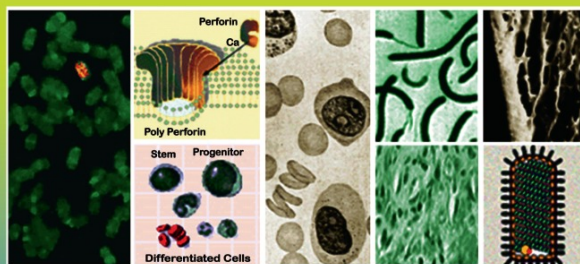
Immunol Res  
DOI 10.1007/s12026-013-8477-9



## **Immunologic Research**

Volume 57  
Numbers 1-3  
December 2013

A Selective Reference to Current Research and Practice



Immunology & Microbiology in Miami

Guest Editor:  
Eckhard R. Podack

**Special Issue: Immunology and Microbiology  
in MIAMI**

 Springer  
12026 • ISSN 0257-277X  
57(1-3) 1-370 (2013)

Editor-in-Chief  
Julius M. Cruse  
Senior Editor  
Robert E. Lewis

**Your article is protected by copyright and all rights are held exclusively by Springer Science +Business Media New York. This e-offprint is for personal use only and shall not be self-archived in electronic repositories. If you wish to self-archive your article, please use the accepted manuscript version for posting on your own website. You may further deposit the accepted manuscript version in any repository, provided it is only made publicly available 12 months after official publication or later and provided acknowledgement is given to the original source of publication and a link is inserted to the published article on Springer's website. The link must be accompanied by the following text: "The final publication is available at [link.springer.com](http://link.springer.com)".**

# Organ-specific phenotypic and functional features of NK cells in humans

Richa Sharma · Asmita Das

© Springer Science+Business Media New York 2013

**Abstract** Natural killer (NK) cells kill virus-infected and tumor target cells without prior sensitization. Each NK cell expresses a multitude of activating and inhibitory receptors, and the interplay of signals determines the outcome of NK cell activity. NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity of target cell involves polarized degranulation at effector–target interface. Peripheral blood NK cell constitutes about 10 % of lymphocytes, and approximately 90 % of peripheral blood NK cells are CD56<sup>dim</sup>CD16<sup>+</sup>; however, there is a distinct subset of NK cells, CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>−</sup>, expressed by certain lymphoid organs which are able to produce large amounts of cytokines including interferon- $\gamma$ , tumor necrosis factor, and granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor, but the cytotoxicity is attained only on their prolonged activation. In this review, we discuss the accumulated data on distinct phenotypes of NK cells in human uterus, liver, intestine, skin, and lung and also attempt to correlate their phenotype with corresponding activity and functions, with significant stress on the role of NK cells in pathology in the specific organs. Our detailed understanding of altered NK cell activity in different organs and their inherent cytotoxic activity against tumor target cells will help us design better immunotherapeutic strategies in NK cell-mediated cancer therapies.

**Keywords** HCC · Inflammatory bowel disease · Melanoma · NK cells · NSCLC · Pre-eclampsia · Psoriasis

## Introduction

Natural killer (NK) cells are large granular lymphocytes that kill virus-infected and tumor cells without prior sensitization. Each NK cell expresses a multitude of activating and inhibitory receptors, and the cytotoxicity of these cells is determined by a fine balance between activation and inhibition signals [1]. These receptors may belong to either type I Ig-superfamily receptor or C-type lectin family of type II membrane proteins [2]. The activating receptors possess a short cytoplasmic tail and an adaptor molecule like DAP-12 that contain ITAMs (immune receptor tyrosine-based activation motifs, YxxI/Ix<sub>6–8</sub>, YxxL/I, x is any amino acid residue), leading to NK cell activation and cytokine production. Additionally, there are other cell surface receptors like NKG2D that are not directly coupled to ITAMs. They are non-covalently associated with DAP-10, which contains YxxM motif (x is any amino acid residue). These adaptor molecules, DAP-10 and DAP-12, contain negatively charged aspartic acid residues in the transmembrane domain that are involved in association with killer-activating receptors or NKG2D receptors. Inhibitory NK cell receptors recognize major histocompatibility (MHC) class I molecules and are characterized by immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs in their long cytoplasmic tail, which recruit intracellular phosphatases, such as SHP1, SHP2, and SHIP that block the cascade initiated by activation receptor, thus causing inhibition of cytotoxicity [3].

Cytotoxicity of target cell may be achieved by a variety of effector mechanisms that include release of granules containing perforin and granzyme as well as TNF superfamily members (FasL/TNF) and their corresponding ligands (Fas/TNFR). FAS-independent NK cell cytotoxicity has been studied extensively and is mediated by cytolytic granule

---

R. Sharma · A. Das (✉)  
Department of Biotechnology, Delhi Technological University,  
Bawana Road, New Delhi 110042, Delhi, India  
e-mail: asmitadas1710@dce.ac.in; asmita1710@gmail.com



polarization and degranulation. Das and Long (2010) established that granule polarization is the preferred target for inhibitory signal thus preventing NK cell cytotoxicity [4].

Human NK cells can be categorized into two subsets on the basis of intensity of CD56 and CD16 surface expression. Systemic NK cells display two types of subsets, CD56<sup>dim</sup>CD16<sup>+</sup> and CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup>. Approximately 90 % of peripheral blood NK cells (pNK) are CD56<sup>dim</sup>CD16<sup>+</sup>, which produce cytokines and lyse the target cells. By contrast, CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup> NK cell subsets preferentially expressed in certain lymphoid organs are able to produce large amounts of cytokines, including interferon- $\gamma$  (INF- $\gamma$ ), tumor necrosis factor (TNF), and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, but cytotoxicity is attained only on their prolonged activation [5]. Vossen et al. [6] reported majority of circulating NK cell population, which are CD56<sup>dim</sup> and also CD27<sup>-</sup>, release high levels of perforin and granzyme B and had strong cytotoxic activity. On the other hand, NK cells that were CD27<sup>+</sup> and CD56<sup>bright</sup> had markedly low levels of perforin and granzyme B and hence low cytotoxic potential. Also, recruitment of NK cells to different inflamed tissues is controlled via different chemokine receptors repertoire, and there exists a unique representation of NK cell subset in different tissues/organs [7]. These phenotypically different NK cell subsets showing disparate functions might be involved during different stages of infection and other pathological conditions. In this review, we have summarized the data on the distinct phenotype of NK cells in uterus, liver, intestine, skin, and lung and attempted to relate with their corresponding activity and functions in these different organs.

### NK cells in uterus

Human deciduas possess almost 70 % of NK cells among total lymphocytes during pregnancy [8]. The main NK cell subset found in human uterine mucosa is CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup>, and the level of expression of CD56 on these NK cells is even higher than that of pNK cells [9]. Vacca et al. [10] analyzed hematopoietic precursors in deciduas and showed that CD34 cells differentiated into CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup> NK cells on interaction with the components of the deciduas. On successful implantation, there was dramatic recruitment of immature NK cells that attained maturity in uterine microenvironment [11]. Manaster et al. [12] suggested that the higher percentage of NK cells during pregnancy play crucial role in implantation and vascular modification in the decidua, hence are vital for normal pregnancy. Recently, it has been reported that decidual NK cells express CMKLR1 (for a chemoattractant, chemerin);

CMKLR1/chemerin interaction leads to NK cells recruitment to deciduas from periphery and formation of capillary-like tube, therefore mediating vascular remodeling during early pregnancy [13]. Though the role of chemerin in successful pregnancy has been established, its physiological role in disease outcome like pre-eclampsia is not yet clear.

Natural killer cells in the uterus remain non-toxic to the fetal-derived trophoblasts at the fetal-maternal interface. Extravillous trophoblast (EVT) cells lack HLA-A/B (human leukocyte antigen) expression and express an unusual combination of classical MHC class I molecule HLA-C as well as non-classical class I molecules HLA-G, which may protect fetal tissues from maternal immune system [14]. Vacca et al. [15] observed that dNK cells did not lyse trophoblast cell lines JAR and JEG3, while pNK cells could easily kill them. Interaction between the non-classical class I MHC molecule HLA-G and KIR2DL4 initiates the production of proinflammatory cytokines and proangiogenic factors (Ang1, Ang2, VEGF-A, VEGF-C, IFN- $\gamma$ , and TGF $\beta$ 1) that promote vascular remodeling as well as induce surface co-expression of HLA-E on trophoblast cells and thus lead to a strong inhibitory signals in dNK cells through CD94/NKG2A [16–18]. Moreover, uNK cells, but not pNK cells, secreted VEGF-C that activated TAP-1 expression on trophoblast cells and thus impart protection from uNK cell-mediated cytotoxicity [19]. Fu et al. [20] analyzed that CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD27<sup>+</sup> dNK cells maintain fetal-maternal tolerance by suppressing T<sub>H</sub>17-mediated inflammatory response, and loss of this regulatory response leads to recurrent spontaneous abortion. Recently, it has been observed that combined factors like TGF- $\beta$ , hypoxia, and demethylating agent are responsible for VEGF-A secretion, reduced cytotoxicity, and invasion of trophoblast cells by dNK cells [21]. In line with these studies, Yoksta et al. [22] established that NKp46 expression on uNK cells up-regulates the production of cytokines that facilitate normal pregnancy.

Impaired combination of maternal KIR receptors on dNK cells and fetal HLA on EVT cells could increase the risk of pregnancy-associated disorders [23]. Faridi et al. [24] analyzed KIR genotypes in women experiencing recurrent miscarriages and concluded that over activation of activating receptors may contribute to loss of pregnancy.

Pre-eclampsia is characterized by a poor placental perfusion due to failure of transformation of the maternal spiral arteries, leading to hypertension and proteinuria. Goldman-wohl et al. [25] described that reduced expression of HLA-G on EVT cells rendered trophoblasts susceptible to lysis by dNK cells, which in turn resulted in impaired trophoblast invasion and constriction of placental spiral arteries, resulting in restricted blood supply to the placenta. Furthermore, there was increased level of VEGF

soluble receptors, soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase, that act as anti-angiogenic factors, which in turn promotes maternal syndrome. The process of spiral artery remodeling involves apoptosis of vascular smooth muscle cells (VSMCs) and temporary loss of endothelial layer; these events were controlled by cells at maternal–fetal interface. Recently, Doppler ultrasound method was used to categorize NK cells into normal Resistance Index (RI) group and high RI group. dNK cells with normal-RI had shown more extensive vessel remodeling and activated pro-apoptotic factor, FasL, that induced vascular cell apoptosis, whereas dNK cells isolated from pregnancies with high RI failed to induce VSMCs apoptosis and led to impaired trophoblast invasion and impaired artery remodeling and therefore promoted pregnancy complications like pre-eclampsia [26].

Hence, during pregnancy there is increased migration of immature NK cells from periphery which undergo significant change in their receptor profile upon interaction with decidual components. Thus, NK cells play crucial role in spiral artery remodeling in fetal trophoblast and loss of dNK cells leads to pathological conditions like pre-eclampsia and recurrent spontaneous abortion [27].

### NK cells in liver

Human liver contains distinct populations of NK cells, T cells, and NKT cells, defined by their expression of CD3<sup>-</sup>CD56<sup>+</sup>, CD3<sup>+</sup>CD56<sup>-</sup>, and CD3<sup>+</sup>CD56<sup>+</sup>, respectively [28]. Majority of liver NK cells are CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup> that showed a higher expression of NKG2A/CD94 and lower expression of KIRs resembling CD56<sup>bright</sup>pNK cells. This subset expresses the activation marker CD69 and showed elevated levels of adhesion molecule CD11a compared to CD56<sup>bright</sup>NK cells in blood [29]. Interestingly, the cytotoxic potential of CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup>NK cells in liver is debatable. Burt et al. showed that liver NK cells were less cytotoxic than pNK cells in hepatic malignancy. They reported that CD16<sup>-</sup>NK cell subset expressed high level of NKp44, HLA-DR, and CD69 but had poor ability to kill K562- and MHC-I-deficient LCL721.221 targets. Further they showed that the small proportion of CD56<sup>dim</sup>CD16<sup>+</sup> subset in liver had lower perforin expression compared to their blood counterparts. Moreover, they observed lower expression of self-KIR<sup>+</sup>NKG2A<sup>-</sup> and self-KIR<sup>+</sup>NKG2A<sup>+</sup> by CD16<sup>+</sup> subset in liver as compared to pNK. The self-KIR expression levels on CD16<sup>-</sup> population in liver and peripheral blood were comparable. Hence, the CD16<sup>+</sup> population in liver, which contributed more significantly to liver NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity, comprised of a high percentage of unlicensed NK cells [30]. Thus, CD56<sup>bright</sup> subsets in liver were phenotypically and functionally

distinct from same subset in periphery. In direct contrast to the above findings, Moroso et al. reported that CD56<sup>bright</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup>CD69<sup>+</sup> population showed a higher proportion of perforin, granzyme A and B and exert twofold higher cytotoxicity by hepatic NK cells against K562 target cells without IL-2 stimulation as compared to the same subset in blood. This unique subset of NK cells is transferred from donor to recipient after liver transplantation [29].

Ishiyama et al. [31] observed that upon IL-2 stimulation, the expression of TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) significantly increased and up-regulated killing capacity of NK cells against HepG2, a hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) cell line compared to pNK cells of the same donor.

Chuang et al. [32] reported that abundant NK cells occupied small bile ducts of liver in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) and they recruited from periphery to liver during PBC and exerted higher cytotoxic effect, resulting in aggravated hepatic damage. Upon ligation of TLR4 in the presence of IFN- $\alpha$ , there is activation of NK cells and TRAIL expression in PBC patients [33]. Recently, it has been seen that CD16<sup>-</sup>NK cell subsets accumulate in liver and contribute to chronic liver disease severity [34].

It has been reported that low density of NK cells in intratumoral cells of HCC patients promoted tumor survival [35]. Lin et al. [36] suggested that reduced NK cell population in HCC tumor is because of poor expression of chemerin protein. Also, lower expression of activating receptors NKG2D, NKP30, and NKP44 and increased expression of inhibitory receptors were observed in advanced cancer stage of HCC patients [37]. Li et al. [38] demonstrated that HCC-derived fibroblast factors induced impaired cytokine production and decreased cytotoxicity of NK cells.

Although studies have been carried out on the involvement of pNK cells in PBC [39] and especially in animal models [40], role of liver-specific NK cells in pathogenesis needs further exploration. Also, hepatic NK cells have been demonstrated to be hypoactive in cytotoxic potential due to weaker expression of activating receptors and poor chemerin expression preventing pNK recruitment to HCC, thus favoring tumor survival. In HCC, reduced NK cell population and hypoactivity of the hepatic NK cells favor tumor growth. Hence, immunotherapeutics using NK cells in HCC will require further understanding of HCC-mediated NK cell receptor modulation.

### NK cells in intestine

Natural killer cells can be found throughout the human digestive tract and constitute a diverse phenotype. Most of

the NK cells and NK-like cell population among intraepithelial lymphocytes (IELs) had been shown to express CD56, CD161, CD122, CD69 and minor fraction expressed CD16 but lacked CD57 expression [41]. Leon et al. [42] identified a unique subset of NK-like cells among small intestinal IELs that were CD3<sup>-</sup> CD16<sup>-</sup> CD7<sup>+</sup> and resembled NK cells in other mucoid tissues. They showed a strong lytic activity with increased perforin content on stimulation with IL-2 as compared to pNK cells.

Lindgren et al. [43] demonstrated that CD8<sup>-</sup>CD16<sup>-</sup>CD56<sup>bright</sup> NK cell subsets predominate gastrointestinal mucosa. Stimulation of mucosal NK cells with the combination of *Helicobacter pylori* antigen and IL-12 leads to NK cell activation and production of IFN- $\gamma$ , thus playing important role in bacterial control. Lindgren et al. [44] proposed that TLR2 involved in recognition of *H. pylori* by NK cells in the gastrointestinal mucosa was capable of combating *H. pylori* infection by production of IFN- $\gamma$ .

Zhang et al. [45] observed increased expression of HLA-Cw\*07 gene in patients with ulcerative colitis (UC) and HLA-Cw\*12 gene phenotype in Crohn's disease (CD) patients. This HLA overexpression reduced the activity of NK cells toward such target and thus increased IBD susceptibility. Also, IL-23 expression in inflamed mucosa of IBD promoted activation of NK cells and induced pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion such as IFN- $\gamma$  and TNF that lead to the severity of IBD [46]. However, precise role of IL-23 in NK cell activation in mucosal inflammation needs further investigation.

The frequency of NK cells expressing CD16 increased in lamina propria of patients with CD or UC compared to healthy controls [47]. Takamaya et al. showed two distinct populations of NK cells in intestinal mucosa, NKp44<sup>-</sup>NKp46<sup>+</sup> CD122<sup>+</sup> CD127<sup>-</sup> and NKp44<sup>+</sup> NKp46<sup>-</sup> CD122<sup>-</sup> CD127<sup>+</sup>. NKp44<sup>-</sup> NKp46<sup>+</sup> NK cells produced large amount of IFN- $\gamma$  and their population was significantly raised in the intestinal mucosa of individuals with CD. On the other hand, NKp44<sup>+</sup> NKp46<sup>-</sup> cells were scarce in individuals with CD. Thus, altered balance between NKp44<sup>+</sup> NKp46<sup>-</sup> and NKp44<sup>-</sup> NKp46<sup>+</sup> cells may be involved in the pathogenesis of IBD [48].

Reduced NK cell infiltration colorectal carcinoma (CRC) tissue has been reported [49]. NK cell and CRC interaction induced alteration of phenotype on NK cells. The tumor cell-associated NK cells down-regulated the expression of activating receptors NKG2D, NKp44, DNAM-1 and had reduced capacity to produce IFN- $\gamma$  [50]. Likewise, NK cells derived from colon carcinoma showed low expression of DNAM-1 and NKG2D [51]. Furthermore, NK cells in gastric cancer tissue expressed low levels of NKG2D that might be responsible for impaired NK cell function and cancer growth [52]. Combined blocking of NCRs (NKp30, NKp44, and

NKp46) leads to the inhibition of NK cell cytotoxicity against H7 29, SW 480 colon cancer cell line [53]. Thus, modulation of NK cell receptors and function involved in disease progression has been consistently observed but the mechanism for receptors modulation on intestinal NK cells is still unclear.

### NK cells in skin

CD56<sup>bright</sup> CD16<sup>-</sup> NK cells predominate in skin, express chemokine receptor CCR8, and lack CCR7 expression in contrast to pNK cells [54].

Skin-derived NK cells have potential to lyse melanoma cells. CD56<sup>+</sup> CD3<sup>-</sup> NK cells exerted cytotoxicity against SK-Mel2 melanoma cell line and produced perforin [55]. Carrega et al. [55] compared NK cell-mediated lysis of 10 different autologous melanoma cell lines and suggested that either deletion or low expression level of HLA class I allele specific for KIR was responsible for NK cell-mediated autologous melanoma cell lysis.

NK cells are actively engaged in psoriasis, a chronic inflammatory condition of skin, characterized by red, raised, scaly plaques typically on elbows, knees, and scalp. CD56<sup>bright</sup> CD3<sup>-</sup> NK cell population has been shown to infiltrate psoriatic skin in response to CXCL10 and CCL5 ligands for chemokine receptors (CXCR3 and CCR5 resp.) expressed on skin NK cells. This NK cell subset also expressed activation marker CD69 and produces high levels of IFN- $\gamma$  in vitro on IL-2 stimulation [56]. Batista et al. [57] isolated NK cells from psoriatic and healthy skin and observed significant increase in percentage of CD57<sup>-</sup> CD56<sup>+</sup> CD16<sup>+</sup> population with increased expression of NKG2A on NK cells in lesional skin. However, this CD57<sup>-</sup> CD56<sup>+</sup> CD16<sup>+</sup> population showed higher IFN- $\gamma$  production on IL-2 stimulation. Thus, it can be concluded that psoriatic skin harbors less differentiated phenotype, and future studies are needed to determine the significance of this phenotype on cytolytic activity of NK cells in psoriasis.

Carbone et al. [58] identified a distinct population of NK cells that are CD56<sup>bright</sup> CD16<sup>-</sup> CD62L<sup>-</sup> in skin during allergic contact dermatitis. They expressed chemokine receptor CXCR3, CCR6, CCR5, C-type lectin NKG2A, NKp44, NKp46, NKG2D, and perforin that contributed to the activation of IFN- $\gamma$  and TNF- $\alpha$ , thus associated with allergic responses.

Balsamo et al. [59] demonstrated that melanoma cell lines displayed increased expression of classical and non-classical HLA-I molecules upon co-culture. They also demonstrated that NK-melanoma interaction resulted in the release of IFN- $\gamma$  and down-regulation of activating receptors NKG2D, NKp44, and DNAM-1, which render

the melanoma cells resistant to NK cell-mediated lysis. Moreover, NK–melanoma interaction also resulted in lower expression of G-protein-coupled receptor, GPR 56, which was involved in tumor progression and metastasis [60].

Morettas group demonstrated that NK–melanoma interaction on co-culture favored the release of indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO) and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), which trigger down-regulation of activating receptors NKp44, NKp30, and NKG2D. This resulted in restricted NK cell-mediated cytolytic activity against melanoma cell and thus aided in tumor progression [61].

### NK cells in lung

The lungs and the upper respiratory tract are constantly prone to infection by various bacterial and viral infections, and innate immune system is known to play a crucial role in preventing disease progression.

The study of NK cell subsets in broncho-alveolar lavage fluid (BALF) as well as blood of healthy individuals and sarcoidosis patients revealed that frequencies of CD56<sup>bright</sup> (2.1 %) and CD56<sup>dim</sup> (98 %) NK cells in BALF were similar to CD56<sup>bright</sup> (2.9 %) and CD56<sup>dim</sup> (96.5 %) subset in peripheral blood NK cells. They also reported NK cells representing CD94<sup>high</sup> KIR<sup>low</sup> subset which were recruited from periphery to lungs during respiratory tract inflammation [62]. Similarly, Pokkali et al. [63] reported that NK cells migrated to lungs during TB infection from peripheral blood in response to IL-8, IP-10, and MCP-1. These CD56<sup>bright</sup> NK cell subsets also showed up-regulated chemokine receptor expression (CCR1, CCR2, and CCR7), activation marker CD69, and TLRs.

Carrega et al. isolated NK cells from non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) specimen; they displayed CD56<sup>bright</sup> CD16<sup>−</sup> subset with higher frequency. NSCLC associated NK cells showed higher expression of activation marker NKp44, HLA-DR, CD-69, failed to express CD107a and thus exerted lower cytotoxicity against NK cell susceptible K562 cell line but retained ability to produce cytokines comparable to pNK cells [64]. Likewise, Platonova et al. reported that NK cells infiltrated NSCLC and were restricted to tumor stroma. Intratumoral NK cells showed increased expression of activating receptors NKp44, CD69, and inhibitory receptors CD161, CD94, NKG2A and reduced expression of NKp30, NKp80, DNAM-1, and CD16. Moreover, NSCLC showed higher expression of non-classical HLA-E and HLA-G, protecting them from NK cell cytotoxicity [65]. In line with these studies, Cremer et al. also described tumor-induced modulation of NK cell receptors NKp30, NKp80, DNAM-1, and NKG2D expression and reduced activity of NK cells against

NSCLC tumors [66]. It has been reported that CD11b<sup>−</sup> CD27<sup>−</sup> NK cell population infiltrated NSCLC tumor tissue, and the frequency of this altered population increased as tumor progressed. Thus, CD11b<sup>−</sup> CD27<sup>−</sup> NK cells are associated with progression lung cancer [67]. Thus, NK cells have the capacity to migrate to inflammatory sites with varying expression levels of chemokine receptors, and these NK cell distinct subsets are either detrimental or productive for the defense against infection or anti-tumor response that might open prospective for manipulating NK cells during immunotherapeutics strategies.

### Conclusion

Cytotoxicity by NK cells is based on interplay of activating and inhibitory receptors. Migration of NK cells from periphery to different organs and their receptors modulation may be regulated by cytokines and organ-specific microenvironment. Cytotoxic potential of infiltrating NK cells has been greatly exploited for elimination of tumor cells. Adoptive transfer of in vitro activated allogeneic and autologous NK cells has exhibited clinical efficacy toward control of NSCLC and HCC [68, 69]. However, poor clinical responses were observed with adoptively transferred NK cells in melanoma patients [70]. Thus, cytotoxic potential of NK cells against tumors localized in different organs against tumors needs to be explored further to establish promising and safe NK cell-based immunotherapy. Better understanding of the mechanisms behind receptor modulation, activity, and proliferation of organ-specific NK cell- and tumor-mediated modulation of NK cell activity will give insights into devising good manufacturing practice conditions for adoptive transfer of organ-specific NK cells against various tumors and to answer many of our unresolved lacunae in the development of NK cell-based cancer therapeutic strategies.

**Conflict of interest** None.

### References

1. Kim HS, Das A, Gross C, Bryceson YT, Long EO. Synergistic signals for natural cytotoxicity are required to overcome inhibition by c-Cbl. *Immunity*. 2010;32:175–86.
2. Joyce MG, Sun D. The structural basis of ligand recognition by natural killer cell receptors. *J Biomed Biotechnol*. 2011; 2011:203628.
3. Vivier E, Raulet DH, Moretta A, Caligiuri MA, Zitvogel L, Lanier LL, et al. Innate or adaptive immunity? The example of natural killer cells. *Science*. 2011;331:44–9.
4. Das A, Long EO. Lytic granule polarization, rather than degranulation, is the preferred target of inhibitory receptors in NK cells. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:4698–704.

5. Fauriat C, Long EO, Ljunggren HG, Bryceson YT. Regulation of human NK-cell cytokine and chemokine production by target cell recognition. *Blood*. 2010;2010(115):2167–76.
6. Vossen MT, Matmati M, Hertoghs KM, Baars PA, Gent MR, et al. CD27 defines phenotypically and functionally different human NK cell subsets. *J Immunol*. 2008;180:3739–45.
7. Shi FD, Ljunggren HG, La Cava A, Kaer LV. Organ-specific features of natural killer cells. *Nat Rev Immunol*. 2011;11:658–71.
8. Male V, Gardner L, Moffett A. Isolation of cells from the fetal-maternal interface. *Curr Protoc Immunol*. 2012;40:1–11.
9. Poli A, Michel T, Thérésine M, Andrès E, Hentges F, Zimmer J. CD56bright natural killer (NK) cells: an important NK cell subset. *Immunology*. 2009;126:458–65.
10. Vacca P, Vitale C, Montaldo E, Conte R, Cantoni C, Fulcheri E, et al. CD34 + hematopoietic precursors are present in human decidua and differentiate into natural killer cells upon interaction with stromal cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2011;108:2402–7.
11. Male V, Hughes T, McClory S, Colucci F, Caligiuri MA, Moffett A. Immature NK cells, capable of producing IL-22, are present in human uterine mucosa. *J Immunol*. 2010;185:3913–8.
12. Manaster I, Mandelboim O. The unique properties of uterine NK cells. *Am J Reprod Immunol*. 2010;63:434–44.
13. Carlino C, Trotta E, Stabile H, Morrone S, Bulla R, Soriani A, et al. Chemerin regulates NK cell accumulation and endothelial cell morphogenesis in the decidua during early pregnancy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;97(10):3603–12.
14. Gonen-Gross T, Goldman-Wohl D, Huppertz B, Lankry D, Greenfield C, Natanson-Yaron S, et al. Inhibitory NK receptor recognition of HLA-G: regulation by contact residues and by cell specific expression at the fetal-maternal interface. *PLoS ONE*. 2010;5:e8941.
15. Vacca P, Cantoni C, Prato C, Fulcheri E, Moretta A, Moretta L, et al. Regulatory role of Nkp44, Nkp46, DNAM-1 and NKG2D receptors in the interaction between NK cells and trophoblast cells. Evidence for divergent functional profiles of decidua versus peripheral NK cells. *Int Immunol*. 2008;20:1395–405.
16. Rajagopalan S, Long EO. KIR2DL4 (CD158d): an activation receptor for HLA-G. *Front Immunol*. 2012;3:258.
17. Schiessl B, Innes BA, Bulmer JN, Otun HA, Chadwick TJ, Robson SC, et al. Localization of angiogenic growth factors and their receptors in the human placental bed throughout normal human pregnancy. *Placenta*. 2009;30:79–87.
18. Rajagopalan S, Bryceson YT, Kuppusamy SP, Geraghty DE, van der Meer A, Joosten I, Long EO. Activation of NK cells by an endocytosed receptor for soluble HLA-G. *PLoS Biol*. 2006;4:e9.
19. Kalkunte SS, Mselle TF, Norris WE, Wira CR, Sentman CL, Sharma S. Vascular endothelial growth factor C facilitates immune tolerance and endovascular activity of human uterine NK cells at the maternal-fetal interface. *J Immunol*. 2009;82:4085–92.
20. Fu B, Li X, Sun R, Tong X, Ling B, Tian Z, Wei H. Natural killer cells promote immune tolerance by regulating inflammatory TH17 cells at the human maternal-fetal interface. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013;110(3):E231–40.
21. Cerdeira AS, Rajakumar A, Royle CM, Lo A, Husain Z, Thadhani RI, Sukhatme VP, Karumanchi SA, Kopcow HD. Conversion of peripheral blood NK cells to a decidua NK-like phenotype by a cocktail of defined factors. *J Immunol*. 2013;190(8):3939–48.
22. Yokota M, Fukui A, Funamizu A, Nakamura R, Kamoi M, Fuchinoue K, Sasaki Y, Fukuhara R, Mizunuma H. Role of Nkp46 expression in cytokine production by CD56-positive NK cells in the peripheral blood and the uterine endometrium. *Am J Reprod Immunol*. 2013;3:202–11.
23. Hiby SE, Apps R, Sharkey AM, Farrell E, Gardner L, Mulder A, et al. Maternal activating KIRs protect against human reproductive failure mediated by fetal HLA-C2. *J Clin Invest*. 2010;120:4102–10.
24. Faridi RM, Das V, Tripathi G, Talwar S, Parveen F, Agrawal S. Influence of activating and inhibitory killer immunoglobulin-like receptors on predisposition to recurrent miscarriages. *Hum Reprod*. 2009;24:1758–64.
25. Goldman-wohl D, Yagel S. Preeclampsia—a placenta developmental biology perspective. *J Reprod Immunol*. 2009;82:96–9.
26. Fraser R, Whitley GS, Johnstone AP, Host AJ, Sebire NJ, Thilaganathan B, et al. Impaired decidua natural killer cell regulation of vascular remodelling in early human pregnancies with high uterine artery resistance. *J Pathol*. 2012;228(3):322–32.
27. Wallace AE, Fraser R, Cartwright JE. Extravillous trophoblast and decidua natural killer cells: a remodelling partnership. *Hum Reprod Update*. 2012;18:458–71.
28. Nemeth E, Baird AW, O'Farrelly C. Microanatomy of the liver immune system. *Semin Immunopathol*. 2009;31:333–43.
29. Moroso V, Metselaar HJ, Mancham S, Tilanus HW, Eissens D, Van der Meer A, et al. Liver grafts contain a unique subset of natural killer cells that are transferred into the recipient after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl*. 2010;16:895–908.
30. Burt BM, Plitas G, Zhao Z, Bamboat ZM, Nguyen HM, Dupont B, et al. The lytic potential of human liver NK cells is restricted by their limited expression of inhibitory killer Ig-like receptors. *J Immunol*. 2009;183:1789–96.
31. Ishiyama K, Ohdan H, Ohira M, Mitsuta H, Arihiro K, Asahara T. Difference in cytotoxicity against hepatocellular carcinoma between liver and periphery natural killer cells in humans. *Hepatology*. 2006;43:362–72.
32. Chuang YH, Lian ZX, Tsuneyama K, Chiang BL, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, et al. Increased killing activity and decreased cytokine production in NK cells in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun*. 2006;26:232–40.
33. Shimoda S, Harada K, Niuro H, Shirabe K, Taketomi A, Maehara Y, et al. Interaction between toll-like receptors and natural killer cells in the destruction of bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2011;53:1270–81.
34. Zimmermann HW, Mueller JR, Seidler S, Luedde T, Trautwein C, Tacke F. Frequency and phenotype of human circulating and intrahepatic natural killer cell subsets is differentially regulated according to stage of chronic liver disease. *Digestion*. 2013;88(1):1–16.
35. Zhu LY, Zhou J, Liu YZ, Pan WD. Prognostic significance of natural killer cell infiltration in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ai Zhong*. 2009;28:1198–202.
36. Lin W, Chen YL, Jiang L, Chen JK. Reduced expression of chemerin is associated with a poor prognosis and a lowered infiltration of both dendritic cells and natural killer cells in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Lab*. 2011;57:879–85.
37. Jiang JH, Zhou ZF, Li JY, Ye YB, Chen Q. Expression and significance of the NK cell receptors in primary hepatocellular carcinoma and paracancerous tissues. *Xi Bao Yu Fen Zi Mian Yi Xue Za Zhi*. 2012;28:529–32.
38. Li T, Yang Y, Hua X, Wang G, Liu W, Jia C, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma-associated fibroblasts trigger NK cell dysfunction via PGE2 and IDO. *Cancer Lett*. 2012;318:154–61.
39. Panasiuk A, Prokopowicz D, Zak J. Peripheral blood T, B lymphocytes and NK cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Rocz Akad Med Białymst*. 2001;46:231–9.
40. Shimoda S, Harada K, Niuro H, Shirabe K, Taketomi A, Maehara Y, et al. Interaction between toll-like receptors and natural killer cells in the destruction of bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology*. 2011;53:1270–81.
41. Eiras P, Leon F, Camarero C, Lombardia M, Roldan E, Bootello A, et al. Intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes contain a CD3-CD7 + subset expressing natural killer markers and a singular pattern of adhesion molecules. *Scand J Immunol*. 2000;52:1–6.



42. Leon F, Roldan E, Sanchez L, Camarero C, Bootello A, Roy G. Human small-intestinal epithelium contains functional natural killer lymphocytes. *Gastroenterology*. 2003;125:345–56.
43. Lindgren A, Yun CH, Lundgren A, Sjöling A, Ohman L, Svennerholm AM, et al. CD8-natural killer cells are greatly enriched in the human gastrointestinal tract and have the capacity to respond to bacteria. *J Innate Immun*. 2010;2:294–302.
44. Lindgren A, Pavlovic V, Flach CF, Sjöling A, Lundin S. Interferon-gamma secretion is induced in IL-12 stimulated human NK cells by recognition of *Helicobacter pylori* or TLR2 ligands. *Innate Immun*. 2011;17:191–203.
45. Zhang HX, Li JC, Xu G, Liu ZJ. Association between HLA-Cw polymorphism and inflammatory bowel disease. *Zhonghua Nei Ke Za Zhi*. 2011;50:856–8.
46. Liu Z, Yadav PK, Xu X, Su J, Chen C, Tang M, et al. The increased expression of IL-23 in inflammatory bowel disease promotes intraepithelial and lamina propria lymphocyte inflammatory responses and cytotoxicity. *J Leukoc Biol*. 2011;89:597–606.
47. Steel AW, Mela CM, Lindsay JO, Gazzard BG, Goodier MR. Increased proportion of CD16(+) NK cells in the colonic lamina propria of inflammatory bowel disease patients, but not after azathioprine treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2011;33:115–26.
48. Takayama T, Kamada N, Chinen H, Okamoto S, Kitazume MT, Chang J, et al. Imbalance of NKp44(+)NKp46(-) and NKp44(-)NKp46(+) natural killer cells in the intestinal mucosa of patients with Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology*. 2010;139:882–92.
49. Halama N, Braun M, Kahlert C, Spille A, Quack C, Rahbari N, et al. Natural killer cells are scarce in colorectal carcinoma tissue despite high levels of chemokines and cytokines. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2011;17:678–89.
50. Rocca YS, Roberti MP, Arriaga JM, Amat M, Bruno L, Pampena MB, et al. Altered phenotype in peripheral blood and tumor associated NK cells from colorectal cancer patients. *Innate Immun*. 2012;19(1):76–85.
51. Zhang Z, Su T, He L, Wang H, Ji G, Liu X, et al. Identification and functional analysis of ligands for natural killer cell activating receptors in colon carcinoma. *Tohoku J Exp Med*. 2012;226:59–68.
52. Saito H, Osaki T, Ikeguchi M. Decreased NKG2D expression on NK cells correlates with impaired NK cell function in patients with gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer*. 2012;15:27–33.
53. Bhat R, Rommelaere J. NK-cell-dependent killing of colon carcinoma cells is mediated by natural cytotoxicity receptors (NCRs) and stimulated by parvovirus infection of target cells. *BMC Cancer*. 2013;13:367.
54. Ebert LM, Meuter S, Moser B. Homing and function of human skin gamma delta T cells and NK cells: relevance for tumor surveillance. *J Immunol*. 2006;17:4331–6.
55. Carrega P, Pezzino G, Queirolo P, Bonaccorsi I, Falco M, Vita G, et al. Susceptibility of human melanoma cells to autologous natural killer (NK) cell killing: HLA-related effector mechanisms and role of unlicensed NK cells. *PLoS ONE*. 2009;4:e8132.
56. Ottaviani C, Nasorri F, Bedini C, de Pittà O, Girolomoni G, Cavani A. CD56<sup>bright</sup> CD16<sup>-</sup> NK cells accumulate in psoriatic skin in response to CXCL10 and CCL5 and exacerbate skin inflammation. *Eur J Immunol*. 2006;36:118–28.
57. Batista MD, Ho EL, Kuebler PJ, Milush JM, Lanier LL, Kallas EG, York VA, Chang D, Liao W, Unemori P, Leslie KS, Maurer T, Nixon DF. Skewed distribution of natural killer cells in psoriasis skin lesions. *Exp Dermatol*. 2013;22(1):64–6.
58. Carbone T, Nasorri F, Pennino D, Eyerich K, Foerster S, Cifaldi L, et al. CD56highCD16-CD62L- NK cells accumulate in allergic contact dermatitis and contribute to the expression of allergic responses. *J Immunol*. 2010;184:1102–10.
59. Balsamo M, Vermi W, Parodi M, Pietra G, Manzini C, Queirolo P, et al. Melanoma cells become resistant to NK-cell-mediated killing when exposed to NK-cell numbers compatible with NK-cell infiltration in the tumor. *Eur J Immunol*. 2012;42:1833–42.
60. Xu L, Begum S, Hearn JD, Hynes RO. GPR56, an atypical G protein-coupled receptor, binds tissue transglutaminase, TG2, and inhibits melanoma tumor growth and metastasis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2006;103:9023–8.
61. Pietra G, Manzini C, Rivara S, Vitale M, Cantoni C, Petretto A, et al. Melanoma cells inhibit natural killer cell function by modulating the expression of activating receptors and cytolytic activity. *Cancer Res*. 2012;72:1407–15.
62. Katchar K, Söderström K, Wahlstrom J, Eklund A, Grunewald J. Characterisation of natural killer cells and CD56 + T-cells in sarcoidosis patients. *Eur Respir J*. 2005;26:77–85.
63. Pokkali S, Das SD, Selvaraj A. Differential upregulation of chemokine receptors on CD56 NK cells and their transmigration to the site of infection in tuberculous pleurisy. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol*. 2009;55:352–60.
64. Carrega P, Morandi B, Costa R, Frumento G, Forte G, Altavilla G, et al. Natural killer cells infiltrating human nonsmall-cell lung cancer are enriched in CD56 bright CD16(-) cells and display an impaired capability to kill tumor cells. *Cancer*. 2008;112:863–75.
65. Platonova S, Cherfils-Vicini J, Damotte D, Crozet L, Vieillard V, Validire P, et al. Profound coordinated alterations of intratumoral NK cell phenotype and function in lung carcinoma. *Cancer Res*. 2011;71:5412–22.
66. Cremer I, Fridman WH, Sautès-Fridman C. Tumor microenvironment in NSCLC suppresses NK cells function. *Oncimmunology*. 2012;1:244–6.
67. Jin J, Fu B, Mei X, Yue T, Sun R, Tian Z, Wei H. CD11b(-) CD27(-) NK cells are associated with the progression of lung carcinoma. *PLoS ONE*. 2013;8(4):e61024.
68. Iliopoulou EG, Kountourakis P, Karamouzis MV, Doufexis D, Ardavanis A, Baxevanis CN, et al. A phase I trial of adoptive transfer of allogeneic natural killer cells in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. 2010;59:1781–9.
69. Ohira M, Nishida S, Tryphonopoulos P, Tekin A, Selvaggi G, Moon J, et al. Clinical-scale isolation of interleukin-2-stimulated liver natural killer cells for treatment of liver transplantation with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cell Transplant*. 2012;21(7):1397–406.
70. Parkhurst MR, Riley JP, Dudley ME, Rosenberg SA. Adoptive transfer of autologous natural killer cells leads to high levels of circulating natural killer cells but does not mediate tumor regression. *Clin Cancer Res*. 2011;17:6287–97.